



# **Virtual Tape Control System**

## **Command and Utility Reference**

**Version 5.1.0**

**CRC Update Only**

## **Proprietary Information Statement**

This document and its contents are proprietary to Storage Technology Corporation and may be used only under the terms of the product license or nondisclosure agreement. The information in this document, including any associated software program, may not be reproduced, disclosed or distributed in any manner without the written consent of Storage Technology Corporation.

## **Limitations on Warranties and Liability**

**This document neither extends nor creates warranties of any nature, expressed or implied.** Storage Technology Corporation cannot accept any responsibility for your use of the information in this document or for your use of any associated software program. You are responsible for backing up your data. You should be careful to ensure that your use of the information complies with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations of the jurisdictions in which it is used.

**Warning:** No part or portion of this document may be reproduced in any manner or in any form without the written permission of Storage Technology Corporation.

## **Restricted Rights**

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the U.S. Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c) (1) (ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227–7013 or subparagraphs (c) (1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software — Restricted Rights at 48 CFR 52.227–19, as applicable.

## **Export Destination Control Statement**

These commodities, technology or software were exported from the United States in accordance with the Export Administration Regulations. Diversion contrary to U.S. law is prohibited.

## **First Edition, Revision F - November 2003**

## **CRC Update Only**

This edition applies to Version 5.1.0 of the Virtual Tape Control System software. Information in this publication is subject to change. Send comments about this publication to:

Storage Technology Corporation  
Manager, Software Information Development  
One StorageTek Drive  
Louisville, Colorado 80028-5209

OR

E-mail us at: **[sid@stortek.com](mailto:sid@stortek.com)**

© 2003 Storage Technology Corporation. All rights reserved. StorageTek, the StorageTek logo and the following are trademarks or registered trademarks of Storage Technology Corporation:

StorageTek®  
Nearline®  
Virtual Storage Manager (VSM)<sup>™</sup>  
Expert Library Manager (ExLM)<sup>™</sup>  
Expert Performance Reporter (ExPR)<sup>™</sup>  
Host Software Component (HSC)<sup>™</sup>  
TimberLine<sup>™</sup>

Other products and names mentioned herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies.

---

## About this Book

---

Virtual Tape Control System 5.1.0 (VTCS 5.1.0, hereafter referred to as “VTCS”) is MVS host software, which together the portions of NCS 5.1.0 that support VTCS and the Virtual Tape Storage Subsystem (VTSS), comprises Virtual Storage Manager (VSM).

### Audience

This reference provides VTCS and NCS reference information for StorageTek or customer personnel who are responsible for all VTCS tasks. Also see the following:

- *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide* for information about installing and configuring VTCS.
- *VTCS Administrator's Guide* for information about VTCS administration tasks.

### Reader's Comments

If you have comments on this book, please e-mail us at **[sid@stortek.com](mailto:sid@stortek.com)** and include the document title and number with your comments.

### Prerequisites

To perform the tasks described in this guide, you should already understand the following:

- MVS or OS/390 operating system
- JES2 or JES3
- System Management Facility (SMF)
- Nearline Control Solution (NCS)

### About the Software

This guide applies to VTCS 5.1.0 and NCS 5.1.0 and above. VTCS executes in the native MVS or OS390 environment and does not use or require OS390 OpenEdition services.

## How this Guide is Organized

This guide contains the following sections:

- Chapter 1 “VTCS Utilities and Commands”
- Chapter 2 “HSC Enhancements and Additions for VSM”
- Chapter 3 “LibraryStation Enhancements and Additions for VSM”
- Chapter 4 “MVS/CSC Enhancements and Additions for VSM”
- Appendix A “VTCS SMF Record Format”
- Appendix B “VTD Command Reference”
- Appendix C “NCS/VTCS 5.1 Alphabetic Volsers”
- “Glossary”
- “Index”

## What's New in This Guide?

### First Edition, Revision F

The First Edition, Revision F of this reference contains technical updates and corrections.

### First Edition, Revision E

The First Edition, Revision E of this reference contains technical updates and corrections.

### First Edition, Revision D

The First Edition, Revision D of this reference contains the updates described in Table 1.

**Table 1. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition, Revision D**

This SPE...	...is described in...	...and is available for this FMID...	...via PTF...
Merge Manifest File	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “MERGMFST” on page 81</li> <li>• “IMPORT” on page 76</li> <li>• “MVCMAINT” on page 93</li> <li>• “MVC RPT” on page 106</li> <li>• “VTVRPT” on page 156</li> </ul>	SWS5100	L1H11HZ

**First Edition,  
Revision C**

The newest generation VTSS is the VSM4, which provides the following advantages over its predecessors:

- Enhanced connectivity options.
- Greater throughput.
- Greater VTSS capacity.
- 4x the number of VTDs and 3x the maximum number of VTVs per VTSS.
- Improved reliability and serviceability.

Table 2 summarizes the VSM3 to VSM4 enhancements that you see from a software and system configuration perspective.

**Table 2. VSM3 to VSM4 Comparison: Software and System Configuration Enhancements**

Product Feature	VSM3	VSM4
<b>ESCON Interfaces</b>	16 <b>total</b> where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 to 14 can be host channels</li> <li>• 2 to 8 can be Nearlink/CLINK connections</li> </ul>	32 <b>total</b> where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2 to 28 can be host channels</li> <li>• 2 to 16 can be Nearlink/CLINK connections</li> </ul> <b>Note:</b> On a VSM4, each ICE3 ESCON interface card contains two pairs of ESCON ports. Each pair is controlled by its own Channel Interface Processor (CIP). Each CIP switches between the two ports, so that only one port can transfer data at a time.
<b>Maximum Logical Paths</b>	128	512 <b>Note:</b> VSM4 provides a theoretical maximum of 512 logical paths per VTSS, but you cannot allocate all 512 logical paths for host-to-VTSS connections.
<b>VTDs per VTSS</b>	64	256
<b>Maximum resident VTVs per VTSS</b>	100,000	300,000

The First Edition, Revision C of this guide contains the updates for VSM4 support described in Table 3.

**Table 3. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference for VSM4 Support, First Edition, Revision C**

This Enhancement...	...is described in...
VSM4 support	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “RTD Statement” on page 20</li> <li>• “VTD Statement” on page 21</li> <li>• “VTD” on page 39</li> <li>• “RTD” on page 40</li> <li>• “Suspend” on page 48</li> <li>• “RTD” on page 144</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> See <i>VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide</i> for VSM4 CONFIG examples.</p>

### First Edition, Revision B

The First Edition, Revision B, of this reference contains the updates described in Table 4.

**Table 4. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition, Revision B**

This SPE...	...is described in...	...and is available for this FMID...	...via PTF...
VTV First Residency	“SLSSMF15 - VTCS SMF Subtype 15 Record” on page 238	SMS5100	L1H11DX
		SOS5100	L1H11DY
		SWS5100	L1H11DZ

### First Edition, Revision A

The First Edition, Revision A, of this reference contains the updates described in Table 5.

**Table 5. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition, Revision A**

This SPE...	...is described in...	...and for SOS5100 via PTF...
RECLAIM enhancements	“RECLAIM” on page 121	L1H11DC

### First Edition

The *VTCS Command and Utility Reference* is a new book for VTCS 5.1, and consists of Chapters 8 through 11 plus Appendixes B through D of the *VTCS 5.0 Installation, Configuration, and Administration Guide*. The First Edition of this

reference contains information about the VTCS 5.1 enhancements described in Table 6.

**Table 6. VTCS 5.1 Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition**

<b>This Enhancement...</b>	<b>...is described in...</b>
Addition of MIGRATE parameter to STORCLAS statement to support Clustered VTSS enhancements	“STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191
Alphabetic volser support	Appendix C “NCS/VTCS 5.1 Alphabetic Volsers” on page 285
ANSI label support, which allows non-MVS/CSC clients, such as the Unisys CSC, to use ANSI labels for VTVs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “SPNUM Statement” on page 220</li> <li>• “VIRTACS Statement” on page 223</li> <li>• “SLSSMF13 - VTCS SMF Subtype 13 Record” on page 236</li> </ul>
RTV utility updates to support ANSI label	“RTV Utility” on page 125



## Conventions for Reader Usability

Conventions are used to shorten and clarify explanations and examples within this book.

### Typographic

The following typographical conventions are used in this book:

- **Bold** is used to introduce new or unfamiliar terminology.
- Letter Gothic is used to indicate command names, filenames, and literal output by the computer.
- **Letter Gothic Bold** is used to indicate literal input to the computer.
- *Letter Gothic Italic* is used to indicate that you must substitute the actual value for a command parameter. In the following example, you would substitute your name for the “username” parameter.
- Logon *username*
- A bar ( | ) is used to separate alternative parameter values. In the example shown below either username or systemname must be entered.
- Logon *username|systemname*
- Brackets [ ] are used to indicate that a command parameter is optional.
- Ellipses ( ... ) are used to indicate that a command may be repeated multiple times.
- The use of mixed upper and lower case characters (for non–case sensitive commands) indicates that lower case letters may be omitted to form abbreviations. For example, you may simply enter **Q** when executing the **Quit** command.

### Keys

Single keystrokes are represented by double brackets [ [ ] ] surrounding the key name. For example, press [ [ESC]] indicates that you should press only the escape key.

Combined keystrokes use double brackets and the plus sign (+). The double brackets surround the key names and the plus sign is used to add the second keystroke. For example, press [ [AL]] + [ [C]] indicates that you should press the alternate key and the C key simultaneously.

### Enter Command

The instruction to “press the [ [ENTER]] key” is omitted from most examples, definitions, and explanations in this book.

For example, if the instructions asked you to “enter” **Logon pat**, you would type in **Logon pat** and press lENTERm.

However, if the instructions asked you to “type” **Logon pat**, you would type in **Logon pat** and you would *not* press [ [ENTER]].

## Symbols

The following symbols are used to highlight text in this book.



**Warning:** Information necessary to keep you from damaging your hardware or software.



**Caution:** Information necessary to keep you from corrupting your data.

**Hint:** Information that can be used to shorten or simplify your task or they may simply be used as a reminder.

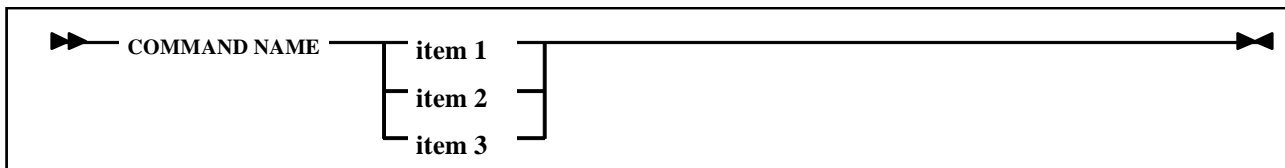


**Note:** Information that may be of special interest to you. Notes are also used to point out exceptions to rules or procedures.

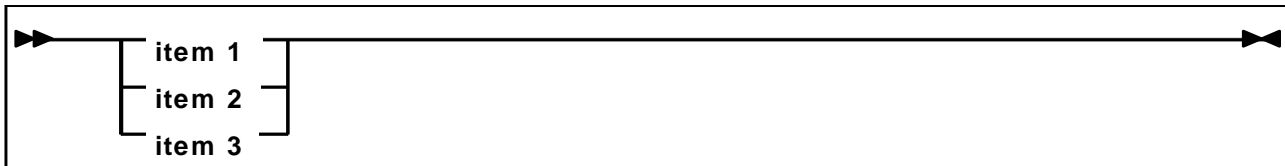
## Syntax

Syntax flow diagram conventions include the following:

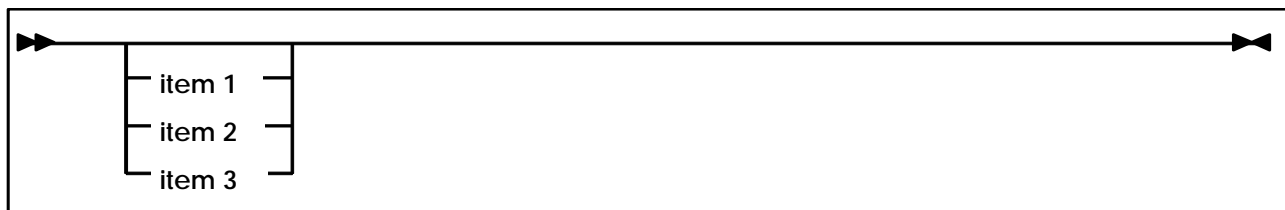
**Flow Lines**—Syntax diagrams consist of a horizontal baseline, horizontal and vertical branch lines and the command text. Diagrams are read left to right and top to bottom. Arrows show flow and direction.



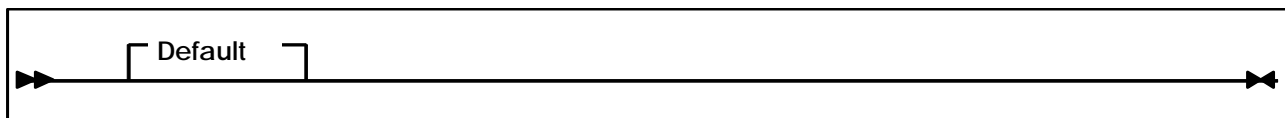
**Single Required Choice**—Branch lines (without repeat arrows) indicate that a single choice must be made. If one of the items to choose from is on the baseline of the diagram, one item must be selected.



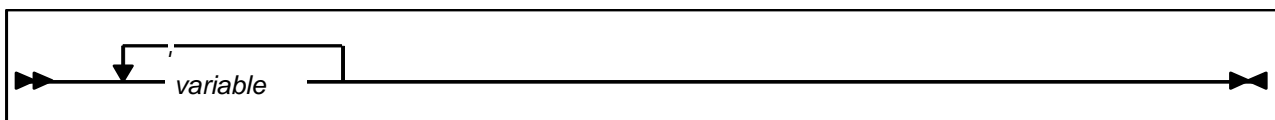
**Single Optional Choice**—If the first item is on the line below the baseline, one item may optionally be selected.



**Defaults**—Default values and parameters appear above the baseline.



**Repeat Symbol**—A repeat symbol indicates that more than one choice can be made or that a single choice can be made more than once. The repeat symbol shown in the following example indicates that a comma is required as the repeat separator.



**Keywords**—All command keywords are shown in all upper case or in mixed case. When commands are not case sensitive, mixed case implies that the lowercase letters may be omitted to form an abbreviation.

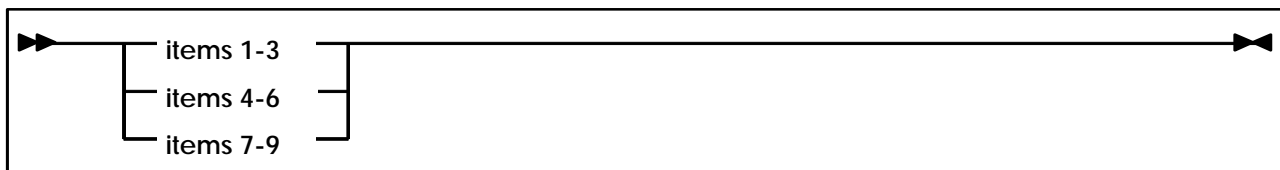
**Variables**—Italic type is used to indicate a variable.

**Alternatives**—A bar ( | ) is used to separate alternative parameter values.

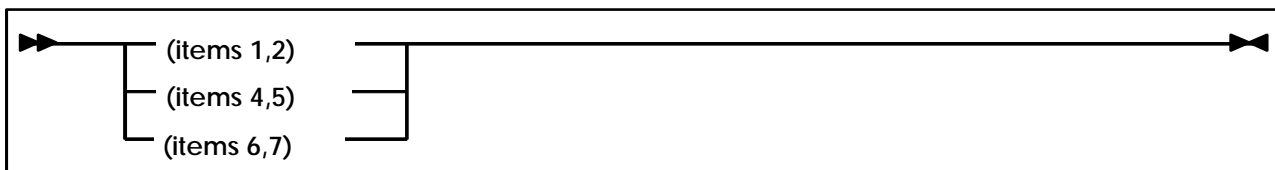
**Optional**—Brackets [ ] are used to indicate that a command parameter is optional.

**Delimiters**—If a comma (,), a semicolon (;), or other delimiter is shown with an element of the syntax diagram, it must be entered as part of the statement or command.

**Ranges**—An inclusive range is indicated by a pair of elements of the same length and data type, joined by a dash. The first element must be strictly less than the second element.



**Lists**—A list consists of one or more elements. If more than one element is specified, the elements must be separated by a comma or a blank and the entire line must be enclosed by parentheses.



## Related Publications

The following publications provide additional information about VSM and StorageTek's Automated Cartridge System software and hardware.

### VTCS and VSM

The VTCS and VSM documentation set consists of the following:

- *Introduction to VSM*, which you can request from your StorageTek representative
- The VTCS 5.1.0 Information CD-ROM, which contains PDF file formats of *Virtual Tape Control System Installation and Configuration Guide*, *Virtual Tape Control System Administrator's Guide*, *Virtual Tape Control System Command and Utility Reference*, *Virtual Tape Control System Messages*, and *Virtual Tape Control System XML Reference*
- *Virtual Tape Control System Installation and Configuration Guide*
- *Virtual Tape Control System Administrator's Guide*
- *Virtual Tape Control System Command and Utility Reference* (this book)
- *Virtual Tape Control System Messages*
- *Virtual Tape Control System Quick Reference*
- *Virtual Tape Control System XML Reference*
- *VSM Offsite Vault Disaster Recovery Guide* (supplied with the VSM Offsite Vault Disaster Recovery Feature)

### VTSS

- *Virtual Storage Manager Planning, Implementation, and Usage Guide*
- *Virtual Storage Manager Physical Planning Guide*
- *VTSS Installation Guide*

**NCS**

- *NCS Installation Guide*
- *SMC Administration and Configuration Guide*

**HSC-MVS  
Environment**

- *Configuration Guide*
- *Operator's Guide*
- *System Programmer's Guide*
- *Messages and Codes*
- *System Programmer's Reference Summary*
- *Operator's Reference Summary*

**LibraryStation**

- *Configuration Guide*
- *Operator and System Programmer's Guide*
- *Messages and Codes*

**MVS/CSC**

- *Configuration Guide*
- *Operator Guide*
- *System Programmer Guide*
- *Messages and Codes*

## **ExPR**

- *Introduction to ExPR*
- *ExPR SMP/E Installation*
- *ExPR MVS Configuration*
- *ExPR MVS Reports*
- *ExPR MVS Reference*

## **ExLM 4.0.0**

The ExLM 4.0.0 documentation set consists of the following:

- The ExLM 4.0.0 Information CD-ROM, which contains PDF file formats of *ExLM Installation Guide*, *ExLM System Administrator's Guide*, *ExLM System Administrator's Guide - Field Tables Supplement*, and *ExLM Messages and Codes*
- *ExLM Installation Guide*
- *ExLM System Administrator's Guide*
- *ExLM System Administrator's Guide - Field Tables Supplement*
- *ExLM Messages and Codes*
- *ExLM Quick Reference*

## **ExLM 5.0.0**

The ExLM 5.0.0 documentation set consists of the following:

- The ExLM 5.0.0 Information CD-ROM, which contains PDF file formats of the ExLM publications
- *ExLM Installation Guide*
- *ExLM System Administrator's Guide*
- *ExLM Messages and Codes*
- *ExLM Quick Reference* (includes information formerly provided in the *ExLM 4.0.0 System Administrator's Guide - Field Tables Supplement*)

**IBM Publications**

- *IBM ESA/390 Common I/O-Device Commands and Self Description*
- *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem*  
*Models A01, A02, A10, A20, B02, B04, B20, and B40*  
*Introduction*
- *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem*  
*Models A01, A02, A10, A20, B02, B04, B20, and B40*  
*Hardware Reference*  
(Referred to in this book as the *IBM 3490 Hardware Reference*)
- *IBM 3490 Command Reference*
- *IBM 3480 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Reference*
- *IBM 3480 Installation Guide and Reference*
- *OS/390 V2R4.0 MVS Planning: Global Resource Serialization*
- *MVS Authorized Assembler Services Guide*

## **Online Documentation on the StorageTek CRC**

The StorageTek Customer Resource Center (CRC) on the World Wide Web provides online versions in PDF format of this book, the related StorageTek publications listed on page xii, and many other StorageTek software and hardware publications.



### **To access PDF documents on the StorageTek CRC:**

1. **Using an Internet browser such as Netscape or Internet Explorer, go to the StorageTek CRC at:**

<http://www.support.storagetek.com/>

2. **Click the Login link.**
3. **Fill in the login information.**

If this is the first time you have used the CRC, click Request a CRC password and fill in the requested information. You should receive your account information within two business days.

4. **From the upper left bar, click Product Information and Current Products from the dropdown links.**
5. **Select Software from the Product Family dropdown menu and click Next.**

**Click the desired product link from the Product Categories and navigate to the documents you want to view.**

## **Technical Support**

Refer to *Requesting Help from Software Support* for information about contacting StorageTek for technical support and for requesting changes to software products.



## Document Effectivity

---

EC Number	Date	Doc Kit Number	Type	Effectivity
128582	December 2002	---	First Edition	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.
---	February 2003	---	First Edition, Revision A	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.
---	June 2003	---	First Edition, Revision B	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.
---	June 2003	---	First Edition, Revision C	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.
---	August 2003	---	First Edition, Revision D	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.
---	October 2003	---	First Edition, Revision E	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.
---	November 2003	---	First Edition, Revision F	This document applies to VTCS, Version 5.1.0.



# Contents

---

<b>About this Book</b> .....	<b>iii</b>
Audience .....	iii
Reader's Comments .....	iii
Prerequisites .....	iii
About the Software .....	iii
How this Guide is Organized .....	iv
What's New in This Guide? .....	v
First Edition, Revision F .....	v
First Edition, Revision E .....	v
First Edition, Revision D .....	v
First Edition, Revision C .....	vi
First Edition, Revision B .....	vii
First Edition, Revision A .....	vii
First Edition .....	vii
Conventions for Reader Usability .....	ix
Typographic .....	ix
Keys .....	ix
Enter Command .....	ix
Symbols .....	x
Syntax .....	x
Related Publications .....	xii
VTCS and VSM .....	xii
VTSS .....	xii
NCS .....	xiii
ExPR .....	xiv
ExLM 4.0.0 .....	xiv
ExLM 5.0.0 .....	xiv
IBM Publications .....	xv
Online Documentation on the StorageTek CRC .....	xvi
Technical Support .....	xvi
<b>Document Effectivity</b> .....	<b>xvii</b>

<b>Chapter 1. VTCS Utilities and Commands</b>	<b>1</b>
Using VTCS Utilities	2
Using VTCS Commands	3
AUDIT	4
Syntax	4
Parameters	4
Interfaces	4
Usage	5
JCL Requirements	5
JCL Example	5
Audit Report	6
CANCEL	10
Syntax	10
Parameters	10
Interfaces	10
Usage	11
Command Example	11
JCL Requirements	11
JCL Example	11
CONFIG	12
CONFIG Statement	12
Interfaces	12
GLOBAL Statement	13
RECLAIM Statement	14
VTVOL Statement	15
MVCVOL Statement	16
VTSS Statement	17
RTD Statement	20
VTD Statement	21
CLUSTER Statement	22
CLINK Statement	23
HOST Statement	24
Usage	25
JCL Requirements	26
JCL Examples	27
CONSolid	32
Syntax	32
Parameters	32

Interfaces . . . . .	33
Usage . . . . .	33
JCL Requirements . . . . .	34
JCL Examples . . . . .	35
Consolidation Reports . . . . .	36
DISPLAY . . . . .	37
Syntax . . . . .	38
Parameters . . . . .	39
Interfaces . . . . .	41
Usage . . . . .	41
Command Examples . . . . .	42
JCL Requirements . . . . .	42
JCL Examples . . . . .	43
Output . . . . .	44
Display RTD Output . . . . .	47
DECOM . . . . .	70
Syntax . . . . .	70
Parameters . . . . .	70
Interfaces . . . . .	70
Usage . . . . .	70
JCL Requirements . . . . .	70
JCL Example . . . . .	71
EXPORT . . . . .	72
Syntax . . . . .	72
Parameters . . . . .	73
Interfaces . . . . .	73
Usage . . . . .	74
Optional and Required JCL . . . . .	74
JCL Examples . . . . .	75
IMPORT . . . . .	76
Syntax . . . . .	76
Parameters . . . . .	77
Interfaces . . . . .	78
Usage . . . . .	78
JCL Requirements . . . . .	78
JCL Examples . . . . .	79
MERGMFST . . . . .	81
Syntax . . . . .	81
Parameters . . . . .	81
Interfaces . . . . .	81
Usage . . . . .	81
JCL Requirements . . . . .	82

JCL Examples . . . . .	82
MIGRATE . . . . .	84
Syntax - Format 1 . . . . .	84
Parameters -	
Format 1 . . . . .	84
Syntax - Format 2 . . . . .	85
Parameters -	
Format 2 . . . . .	85
Interfaces . . . . .	85
Usage . . . . .	86
Command Examples . . . . .	86
JCL Requirements . . . . .	86
JCL Examples . . . . .	87
MVCDEF . . . . .	88
Syntax . . . . .	88
Parameters . . . . .	88
Interfaces . . . . .	88
Usage . . . . .	89
Example . . . . .	89
MVCDRAIN . . . . .	90
Syntax . . . . .	90
Parameters . . . . .	90
Interfaces . . . . .	91
Usage . . . . .	91
Command Example . . . . .	92
JCL Requirements . . . . .	92
JCL Example . . . . .	92
MVCMAINT . . . . .	93
Syntax . . . . .	93
Parameters . . . . .	93
Interfaces . . . . .	94
Usage . . . . .	95
JCL Requirements . . . . .	97
JCL Examples . . . . .	97
MVCMAINT Reports . . . . .	98
MVCPLRPT . . . . .	99
Syntax . . . . .	99
Parameters . . . . .	99

Interfaces . . . . .	99
Usage . . . . .	99
JCL Requirements . . . . .	100
JCL Example . . . . .	100
Named MVC Pool Report . . . . .	101
MVCRPT . . . . .	106
Syntax . . . . .	106
Parameters . . . . .	106
Interfaces . . . . .	106
Usage . . . . .	107
JCL Requirements . . . . .	107
JCL Examples . . . . .	108
MVC Reports . . . . .	110
Flat File Record Format . . . . .	115
QUERY . . . . .	117
RECALL . . . . .	118
Syntax . . . . .	118
Parameters . . . . .	118
Interfaces . . . . .	119
Usage . . . . .	119
Command Example . . . . .	119
JCL Requirements . . . . .	120
JCL Example . . . . .	120
RECLAIM . . . . .	121
Syntax . . . . .	121
Parameters . . . . .	121
Interfaces . . . . .	122
Usage . . . . .	123
Command Examples . . . . .	123
JCL Requirements . . . . .	123
JCL Examples . . . . .	124
RTV Utility . . . . .	125
Syntax . . . . .	125
Parameters . . . . .	125
Interfaces . . . . .	128
Usage . . . . .	128
JCL Requirements . . . . .	129
JCL Examples . . . . .	130
RTV Utility Report Messages . . . . .	131
RTV LISTONLY Listing . . . . .	135
RTV Decompress Listing . . . . .	136
SET MIGOPT . . . . .	137

Syntax .....	137
Parameters .....	137
Interfaces .....	138
Usage .....	138
Command Examples .....	138
JCL Requirements .....	138
JCL Examples .....	138
TRACE .....	140
Syntax .....	140
Parameters .....	140
Usage .....	140
Interfaces .....	140
Command Example .....	140
JCL Requirements .....	140
JCL Example .....	141
VARY CLINK .....	142
Syntax .....	142
Parameters .....	142
Interfaces .....	142
Usage .....	143
Command Example .....	143
JCL Requirements .....	143
JCL Example .....	143
VARY RTD .....	144
Syntax .....	144
Parameters .....	144
Interfaces .....	144
Usage .....	144
Command Example .....	144
JCL Requirements .....	145
JCL Example .....	145
VARY VTSS .....	146
Syntax .....	146
Parameters .....	146
Interfaces .....	146
Usage .....	147
Command Example .....	149
JCL Requirements .....	150



JCL Example .....	150
VTVMaint .....	151
Syntax .....	151
Parameters .....	151
Interfaces .....	152
Usage .....	152
JCL Requirements .....	154
JCL Examples .....	154
VTVMaint REPORT .....	155
VTVRPT .....	156
Syntax .....	156
Parameters .....	156
Interfaces .....	156
Usage .....	157
JCL Requirements .....	157
JCL Examples .....	157
VTV Report .....	160
Flat File Record Format .....	164
<b>Chapter 2. HSC Enhancements and Additions for VSM .....</b>	<b>165</b>
DISPLAY Command .....	167
Syntax .....	167
Parameters .....	167
Usage .....	167
Examples .....	167
FEATURES Control Statement .....	168
Syntax .....	168
Parameters .....	168
Usage .....	168
Example .....	168
MERGECDs Utility .....	169
Syntax .....	169
Parameters .....	169
Usage .....	170
JCL Requirements .....	174
JCL Examples .....	175
MGMTCLAS Control Statement .....	177
Syntax - Basic Management Feature .....	177
Parameters - Basic Management Feature .....	178
Syntax - Advanced Management Feature .....	180
Additional Parameters - Advanced Management Feature .....	181
Usage .....	183

Examples . . . . .	184
MGMTDEF Command . . . . .	185
Syntax . . . . .	185
Parameters . . . . .	185
Usage . . . . .	186
Examples . . . . .	186
MOUNT Command . . . . .	187
Syntax . . . . .	187
Parameters . . . . .	187
Usage . . . . .	187
Examples . . . . .	187
MVCPool Control Statement . . . . .	188
Syntax . . . . .	188
Parameters . . . . .	188
Usage . . . . .	190
Example . . . . .	190
STORCLAS Control Statement . . . . .	191
Syntax . . . . .	191
Parameters . . . . .	191
Usage . . . . .	192
Examples . . . . .	193
TAPEREQ Control Statement for HSC . . . . .	194
Syntax . . . . .	195
Parameters . . . . .	196
Usage . . . . .	198
Examples . . . . .	199
UNITATTR Control Statement . . . . .	200
Syntax . . . . .	200
Parameters . . . . .	200
Usage . . . . .	201
Example . . . . .	201
VOLATTR Control Statement . . . . .	202
Syntax . . . . .	202
Parameters . . . . .	202
Usage . . . . .	203
Example . . . . .	203
HSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements . . . . .	204
HSC ALLOC Command Enhancements . . . . .	204

HSC User Exit Enhancements .....	205
HSC Batch API Enhancements .....	205
Batch API Mapping Macros .....	206
SLSUREQ QCDS Request .....	210
Library Element Mapping .....	210
HSC Operator Command Enhancements .....	211
HSC WARN SCRATCH Command Enhancements .....	212
HSC DISPLAY THRESHLD Command Enhancements .....	213
HSC DISPLAY SCRATCH Command Enhancements .....	215
HSC DELDISP Parameter Enhancements .....	217
<b>Chapter 3. LibraryStation Enhancements and Additions for VSM.....</b>	<b>219</b>
SPNUM Statement .....	220
Syntax .....	220
Parameters .....	220
Usage .....	221
Examples .....	222
VIRTACS Statement .....	223
Syntax .....	223
Parameters .....	223
Usage .....	223
Examples .....	223
SLGDIAG VIRTUAL_DRIVE Parameter .....	224
<b>Chapter 4. MVS/CSC Enhancements and Additions for VSM.....</b>	<b>225</b>
TAPEREQ Control Statement for MVS/CSC .....	226
Syntax .....	227
Parameters .....	228
Usage .....	230
Examples .....	230
MVS/CSC Startup Parameter Enhancements .....	231
DEFER .....	231
FETCH .....	231
MVS/CSC DISPLAY Command Enhancements .....	231
MVS/CSC User Exit Enhancements .....	231
MVS/CSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements .....	232
MVS/CSC DELDISP Parameter Enhancements .....	232

<b>Appendix A. VTCS SMF Record Format .....</b>	<b>233</b>
SLSSMF10 - VTCS SMF Subtype 10 Record .....	234
Function .....	234
SLSSMF11 - VTCS SMF Subtype 11 Record .....	235
Function .....	235
SLSSMF13 - VTCS SMF Subtype 13 Record .....	236
Function .....	236
SLSSMF14 - VTCS SMF Subtype 14 Record .....	237
Function .....	237
SLSSMF15 - VTCS SMF Subtype 15 Record .....	238
Function .....	238
SLSSMF16 - VTCS SMF Subtype 16 Record .....	239
Function .....	239
SLSSMF17 - VTCS SMF Subtype 17 Record .....	240
Function .....	240
SLSSMF18 - VTCS SMF Subtype 18 Record .....	241
Function .....	241
SLSSMF19 - VTCS SMF Subtype 19 Record .....	242
Function .....	242
SLSSMF20 - VTCS SMF Subtype 20 Record .....	243
Function .....	243
SLSSMF21 - VTCS SMF Subtype 21 Record .....	244
Function .....	244
SLSSMF25 - VTCS SMF Subtype 25 Record .....	245
Function .....	245
SLSSMF26 - VTCS SMF Subtype 26 Record .....	246
Function .....	246
SLSSMF27 - VTCS SMF Subtype 27 Record .....	247
Function .....	247
SLSSMF28 - VTCS SMF Subtype 28 Record .....	248
Function .....	248
SLSSMF29 - VTCS SMF Subtype 29 Record .....	249
Function .....	249

<b>Appendix B. VTD Command Reference</b>	<b>251</b>
Overview	251
Bit Naming Conventions	251
Discussion of 3480/3490 Terms	251
Command Overview	253
Characteristics of the VTD	253
Product and Media Type Emulation	253
Command Summary	253
Command Dependent Unit-Checks	257
Command Dependent Execution Status	257
Retry Status	260
Differentiated Channel Command Descriptions	261
Data Security Erase Command	261
Erase Gap Command	261
Load Display Command	261
Locate Block	261
Mode Set Command	262
Perform Subsystem Function Command	262
Activate Access Control Order	263
Deactivate Access Control Order	263
Read Backwards Command	264
Read Block ID Command	264
Read Buffer Command	264
Read Buffered Log Command	264
Read Configuration Data Command	264
Read Device Characteristics Command	267
Read Forward Command	268
Read Message ID Command	268
Read Subsystem Data Command	268
Sense ID Command	271
Set Interface Identifier	271
Set Tape Write Immediate Command	271
Synchronize Command	272
Write Command	272
Path Management Commands	273
Status and Sense Bytes	274
Status Byte	274
Sense and Log Data Formats	274
Error Recovery Action (ERA) Codes Support	279
Control Unit Images	281
Introduction	281
Dual Control Units - DCUs	281

Virtual Control Units - VCUs . . . . .	281
DCU versus VCU . . . . .	281
System Reset Effects . . . . .	282
Path Group Effects . . . . .	282
SPID Command -- Path versus Device -- Deep Background . . . . .	282
VCU Effects on SPID and SNID . . . . .	283
<b>Appendix C. NCS/VTCS 5.1 Alphabetic Volsters . . . . .</b>	<b>285</b>
Alphabetic Volser Examples . . . . .	288
<b>Glossary . . . . .</b>	<b>291</b>
<b>Index . . . . .</b>	<b>303</b>

# List of Figures

---

Figure 1. Audit syntax . . . . .	4
Figure 2. Example JCL for the AUDIT utility . . . . .	5
Figure 3. Example AUDIT utility report. . . . .	6
Figure 4. CANcel syntax . . . . .	10
Figure 5. Example JCL for the CANCEL utility. . . . .	11
Figure 6. CONFIG statement syntax . . . . .	12
Figure 7. GLOBAL statement syntax. . . . .	13
Figure 8. RECLAIM statement syntax. . . . .	14
Figure 9. VTVVOL statement syntax . . . . .	15
Figure 10. MVCVOL statement syntax . . . . .	16
Figure 11. VTSS statement syntax. . . . .	17
Figure 12. RTD statement syntax. . . . .	20
Figure 13. VTD statement syntax. . . . .	21
Figure 14. CLUSTER statement syntax. . . . .	22
Figure 15. CLINK statement syntax. . . . .	23
Figure 16. HOST statement syntax . . . . .	24
Figure 17. CONFIG example: initial VSM2 or VSM3 configuration, all hosts access all VTDs . . . . .	27
Figure 18. CONFIG example: initial configuration, all hosts access VTDs in one VTSS, selected hosts access VTDs in second VTSS . . . . .	28
Figure 19. CONFIG example: updating configuration to add RTDs. . . . .	29
Figure 20. CONFIG example: updating configuration to add MVCs and VTVs and change AMTs . . . . .	30
Figure 21. CONFIG example: updating configuration to deny host access to a physically removed VTSS. . . . .	31
Figure 22. CONSolid utility syntax. . . . .	32
Figure 23. CONSolid utility example: specifying VTVs to consolidate. . . . .	35
Figure 24. CONSolid example: specifying Management Class to consolidate . . . . .	35
Figure 25. Query/Display syntax . . . . .	38
Figure 26. Example output from a Display Active DETail command: parent and child requests. . . . .	42
Figure 27. Example JCL to display the number of free MVCs and MVC reclaim candidates in each MVC pool . . . . .	43
Figure 28. Example JCL to display detailed status of all active processes . . . . .	43
Figure 29. Example output from Display VTSS . . . . .	44
Figure 30. Example additional output from Display VTSS Detail . . . . .	46
Figure 31. Example output from Display VTD. . . . .	47
Figure 32. Example output from a VT Display RTD command . . . . .	47
Figure 33. Example output from the VT Display command (no detail) . . . . .	49
Figure 34. Example output from a VT Display Active DETail command. . . . .	49
Figure 35. Example output from a VT Display Queue DETail command. . . . .	49
Figure 36. Example output from Display SCRATCH . . . . .	54
Figure 37. Example output from Display MVCPool NAME(Pool1). . . . .	54
Figure 38. Example output from Display MVCPool (no pool name specified) . . . . .	55
Figure 39. Example output from Display VTV. . . . .	56
Figure 40. Example output from Display MVC . . . . .	58
Figure 41. Example output from Display CONFIG . . . . .	61
Figure 42. Example output from Display MIGrate . . . . .	63
Figure 43. Example additional output from Display MIGrate DETail. . . . .	64

Figure 44. Example output from Display TASKs .....	65
Figure 45. Example output from Display LOCKs .....	66
Figure 46. Example output from Display CLINK .....	67
Figure 47. Example output from Display CLUSTER .....	68
Figure 48. Example output from Display REPLcat .....	69
Figure 49. DECOM utility syntax .....	70
Figure 50. Example JCL for the DECOM utility .....	71
Figure 51. EXPORT utility syntax .....	72
Figure 52. EXPORT utility example: specifying VTVs to consolidate for export .....	75
Figure 53. EXPORT utility example: specifying Storage Class to determine MVCs for export. ....	75
Figure 54. IMPORT utility syntax .....	76
Figure 55. IMPORT utility example: validation import run .....	79
Figure 56. IMPORT utility example: actual import run. ....	79
Figure 57. IMPORT utility example: import multiple file generations .....	80
Figure 58. MERGMFST utility syntax .....	81
Figure 59. MERGMFST utility example: merge 5 specified manifest files .....	82
Figure 60. MERGMFST utility example: merge 5 generations of manifest files .....	82
Figure 61. MERGMFST utility example: merge all generations of manifest files .....	83
Figure 62. MERGMFST utility example: merge the current manifest file into a cumulative manifest file	83
Figure 63. MIGRATE utility syntax - Format 1 .....	84
Figure 64. MIGRATE utility syntax - Format 2 .....	85
Figure 65. Example JCL for the MIGRATE utility (migrate by Management Class). ....	87
Figure 66. Example JCL for the MIGRATE utility (migrate to threshold) .....	87
Figure 67. VT MVCDEF command syntax .....	88
Figure 68. MVCDRain syntax. ....	90
Figure 69. MVCDRain utility example: draining MVCs by Storage Class. ....	92
Figure 70. MVCMAINT syntax .....	93
Figure 71. MVCMAINT utility example: making MVCs writable .....	97
Figure 72. MVCMAINT utility example: setting MVCs “lost” status on .....	97
Figure 73. Example MVCMAINT report .....	98
Figure 74. MVCPLRPT syntax .....	99
Figure 75. Example JCL for the MVCPLRPT utility (report by Named MVC Pool) .....	100
Figure 76. Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 1) .....	101
Figure 77. Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 2). ....	102
Figure 78. MVCRPT syntax .....	106
Figure 79. Example JCL for the MVCRPT utility (detailed report) .....	108
Figure 80. Example JCL for the MVCRPT utility (detailed report, manifest file input). ....	108
Figure 81. Example JCL for the MVCRPT utility (detailed report, flat file output for ExPR) .....	108
Figure 82. Example JCL for the MVCRPT utility (structured XML format). ....	109
Figure 83. Example MVC summary report. ....	110
Figure 84. Example MVC detailed report (additional fields) .....	114
Figure 85. RECALL syntax. ....	118
Figure 86. Example JCL for the RECALL utility (recall by Management Class). ....	120
Figure 87. RECLAIM syntax .....	121



Figure 88. RECLAIM utility example: reclaiming MVCs by Storage Class .....	124
Figure 89. RECLAIM utility example: reclaiming MVCs by MVC ID .....	124
Figure 90. RTV utility syntax .....	125
Figure 91. Example JCL to run the RTV utility: LISTONLY run .....	130
Figure 92. Example JCL to run the RTV utility: single VTV by volser .....	130
Figure 93. Example JCL to run the RTV utility: single VTV by volser and block ID .....	130
Figure 94. Example RTV LISTONLY listing .....	135
Figure 95. Example RTV Decompress Listing .....	136
Figure 96. SET MIGOPT syntax .....	137
Figure 97. RECLAIM JCL example to change MAXMIG to 5 and MINMIG to 3 .....	138
Figure 98. RECLAIM JCL to change the high AMT to 70% and the low AMT to 25% .....	139
Figure 99. TRace syntax .....	140
Figure 100. JCL example to start tracing for the VTCS component requests .....	141
Figure 101. Vary CLINK syntax .....	142
Figure 102. JCL example to vary CLINK 7 on Cluster CLUSTER1 online .....	143
Figure 103. Vary RTD syntax .....	144
Figure 104. JCL example to vary RTD B10 online .....	145
Figure 105. Vary VTSS syntax .....	146
Figure 106. JCL example to vary VTSS VTSS01 online .....	150
Figure 107. VTMVAINT syntax .....	151
Figure 108. VTMVAINT utility example .....	154
Figure 109. VTMVAINT Report .....	155
Figure 110. VTVRPT syntax .....	156
Figure 111. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility .....	157
Figure 112. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (manifest file input) .....	158
Figure 113. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (flat file output for ExPR) .....	158
Figure 114. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (unavailable VTVs only) .....	158
Figure 115. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (unavailable VTVs only, structured XML format) ..	159
Figure 116. Example output from VTVRPT .....	160
Figure 117. Example output from VTVRPT (UNAVAIL option) .....	161
Figure 118. Display Command .....	167
Figure 119. FEATures Control Statement .....	168
Figure 120. MERGEcds Utility Syntax .....	169
Figure 121. SLSMERGE DD Statement Syntax .....	174
Figure 122. MERGEcds example: updating a CDS or merging CDSs with different VTSS identifiers	175
Figure 123. MERGEcds example: merging CDSs with different VTSS identifiers .....	175
Figure 124. MERGEcds example: merging CDSs with different VTSS identifiers .....	176
Figure 125. MGMTclas Control Statement Syntax - Basic Management Feature .....	177
Figure 126. MGMTclas Control Statement Syntax - Advanced Management Feature .....	180
Figure 127. MGMTDEF Command .....	185
Figure 128. MVCPool Control Statement Syntax .....	188
Figure 129. STORclas Control Statement Syntax .....	191
Figure 130. TAPEREQ Control Statement Syntax .....	195
Figure 131. UNITATTR Control Statement Syntax .....	200
Figure 132. VOLATTR Control Statement Syntax .....	202
Figure 133. Warn SCRatch VSM Command Syntax .....	212
Figure 134. Display THReshld VSM Command Syntax .....	213
Figure 135. Example output from HSC Display THR VSM .....	214

Figure 136. Warn SCRatch VSM Command Syntax . . . . .	215
Figure 137. Example output from HSC Display SCR VSM . . . . .	216
Figure 138. SPNUM Statement Syntax . . . . .	220
Figure 139. VIRTACS Statement Syntax . . . . .	223
Figure 140. MVS/CSC TAPERREQ Control Statement Syntax . . . . .	227

# List of Tables

---

Table 1. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition, Revision D . . . . .	v
Table 2. VSM3 to VSM4 Comparison: Software and System Configuration Enhancements . . . . .	vi
Table 3. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference for VSM4 Support, First Edition, Revision C . . . . .	vii
Table 4. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition, Revision B . . . . .	vii
Table 5. Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition, Revision A . . . . .	vii
Table 6. VTCS 5.1 Updates to VTCS Command and Utility Reference, First Edition . . . . .	viii
Table 7. Data Set Name Wildcards . . . . .	84
Table 8. MVCRPT flat file record format . . . . .	115
Table 9. RTV VTV Label Processing (CPYVOLID Not Specified) . . . . .	126
Table 10. CLINK States . . . . .	143
Table 11. VTSS States . . . . .	147
Table 12. Vary VTSS Usage Scenarios . . . . .	148
Table 13. VTVRPT flat file record format . . . . .	164
Table 14. MERGEcds Parameter Interactions . . . . .	173
Table 15. MGMTclas ACSlist/DUPlex Scenarios . . . . .	184
Table 16. SLUVM DAT Macro Record Format . . . . .	206
Table 17. SLUVTDAT Macro Record Format . . . . .	208
Table 18. Library Element Record Mapping Additions . . . . .	210
Table 19. SLSSMF10 Record Format . . . . .	234
Table 20. SLSSMF11 Record Format . . . . .	235
Table 21. SLSSMF13 Record Format . . . . .	236
Table 22. SLSSMF14 Record Format . . . . .	237
Table 23. SLSSMF15 Record Format . . . . .	238
Table 24. SLSSMF16 Record Format . . . . .	239
Table 25. SLSSMF17 Record Format . . . . .	240
Table 26. SLSSMF18 Record Format . . . . .	241
Table 27. SLSSMF19 Record Format . . . . .	242
Table 28. SLSSMF20 Record Format . . . . .	243
Table 29. SLSSMF21 Record Format . . . . .	244
Table 30. SLSSMF25 Record Format . . . . .	245
Table 31. SLSSMF26 Record Format . . . . .	246
Table 32. SLSSMF27 Record Format . . . . .	247
Table 33. SLSSMF28 Record Format . . . . .	248
Table 34. SLSSMF29 Record Format . . . . .	249
Table 35. Product Designators and Capabilities . . . . .	251
Table 36. Media and Media capabilities . . . . .	251
Table 37. Formatted Media Designators . . . . .	252
Table 38. VTSS Type Emulation . . . . .	253
Table 39. Command Difference Summary . . . . .	253
Table 40. Command Dependent Execution Status . . . . .	258
Table 41. Perform Subsystem Function orders . . . . .	262
Table 42. Perform Subsystem Function data . . . . .	262
Table 43. Activate Access Control Order parameters . . . . .	263
Table 44. De-activate Access Control Order parameters . . . . .	263
Table 45. Read Configuration Data Command data . . . . .	264

Table 46. Read Device Characteristics Command data . . . . .	267
Table 47. Identification of Current Interface (node selector=0) . . . . .	268
Table 48. Identification of Specified Interface 1D(node selector=1). . . . .	269
Table 49. Identification of Specified Interface 1D(node selector=2). . . . .	269
Table 50. Identification of Specified Interface 1D(node selector=2) but attached node is unknown . . .	270
Table 51. Tag or Engraves ID . . . . .	270
Table 52. Sense ID Command data . . . . .	271
Table 53. Channel Information Word (CIW) Format . . . . .	271
Table 54. Sense bytes 0-7. . . . .	274
Table 55. Format 20 - Sense bytes 8-31. . . . .	275
Table 56. Format 22 Sense Bytes 8-31. . . . .	277
Table 57. Format 30 - Sense Bytes 8-31 . . . . .	277
Table 58. Format 30 Log Bytes 32 - 63 . . . . .	278
Table 59. Error Recovery Action Codes . . . . .	279
Table 60. Example Incremental Ranges. . . . .	286
Table 61. Example Range Suffix . . . . .	286
Table 62. Size of Alphabetic Volser Ranges . . . . .	287
Table 63. Valid Alphabetic Ranges . . . . .	288
Table 64. Invalid Alphabetic Ranges . . . . .	289

# Chapter 1. VTCS Utilities and Commands

---

This chapter contains reference information for the following VTCS commands and utilities, where the “Interfaces” section describes the valid interfaces (command only, utility only, or both). For more information, see “Using VTCS Utilities” on page 2 and “Using VTCS Commands” on page 3.

- “AUDIT” on page 4
- “CANCEL” on page 10
- “CONFIG” on page 12
- “CONSolid” on page 32
- “DISPLAY” on page 37
- “DECOM” on page 70
- “EXPORT” on page 72
- “IMPORT” on page 76
- “MERGMFST” on page 81
- “MIGRATE” on page 84
- “MVCDEF” on page 88
- “MVCDRAIN” on page 90
- “MVCMAINT” on page 93
- “MVCPLRPT” on page 99
- “MVCRPT” on page 106
- “QUERY” on page 117
- “RECALL” on page 118
- “RECLAIM” on page 121
- “RTV Utility” on page 125
- “SET MIGOPT” on page 137
- “TRACE” on page 140
- “VARY CLINK” on page 142
- “VARY RTD” on page 144
- “VARY VTSS” on page 146
- “VTVMaint” on page 151
- “VTVRPT” on page 156

## Using VTCS Utilities

You use the SWSRTV program to run the RTV utility. To invoke all other VTCS utilities, you use the SWSADMIN program, which follows the same syntax rules and accepts the same input parameters as the HSC SLUADMIN utility program.

The SWSADMIN program determines the HSC Primary CDS as follows:

- If your JCL **does not** specify the CDS and HSC is up, SWSADMIN queries HSC for the Primary CDS and SWSADMIN uses that CDS. The JCL examples in this chapter show this method.
- If your JCL specifies all defined copies of the CDS, SWSADMIN queries these copies and uses the correct copy. Note that for the CONFIG utility, you must explicitly specify the CDS in your JCL because you should run CONFIG when HSC is down.



**Caution:** As described in “Using VTCS Commands”, entering VTCS commands requires a .VT before the command name. The SWSADMIN program does not require a .VT before the utility name, and adding a .VT produces an error.



**Note:** You can produce utility reports in structured XML format. You can then process the XML output in a programming language of your choice (the World Wide Web has samples of C code that parse XML). For example, see “MVC RPT” on page 106 and “VTV RPT” on page 156.



**Hint:** HSC provides utilities that manage library resources. These utilities are also available to VSM, and include the Scratch Update utilities, which you can use to manage the scratch status of VTVs and MVCs. For more information about the HSC utilities, see Chapter 5, “Utility Functions” in the *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.

Note that you cannot use the Scratch Update utilities to scratch MVCs unless you have removed them from the MVC pool.

## Using VTCS Commands

Like HSC commands, VTCS commands consist of the HSC command prefix character followed immediately by a command name and required or optional positional parameters and keyword parameters.

The VTCS command prefix is the same command prefix used by the HSC with which the VTCS is communicating. This allows HSC to intercept and interpret the command. For example, to cancel all active and queued VSM processes that use an RTD, enter the following:

**.VT CAN T(ALL)**

For more information about the rules governing commands, refer to Chapter 2, “Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities,” in *HSC Operator’s Guide for MVS*.

# AUDIT

AUDIT updates the MVC and VTV information in the HSC CDS.

## Syntax

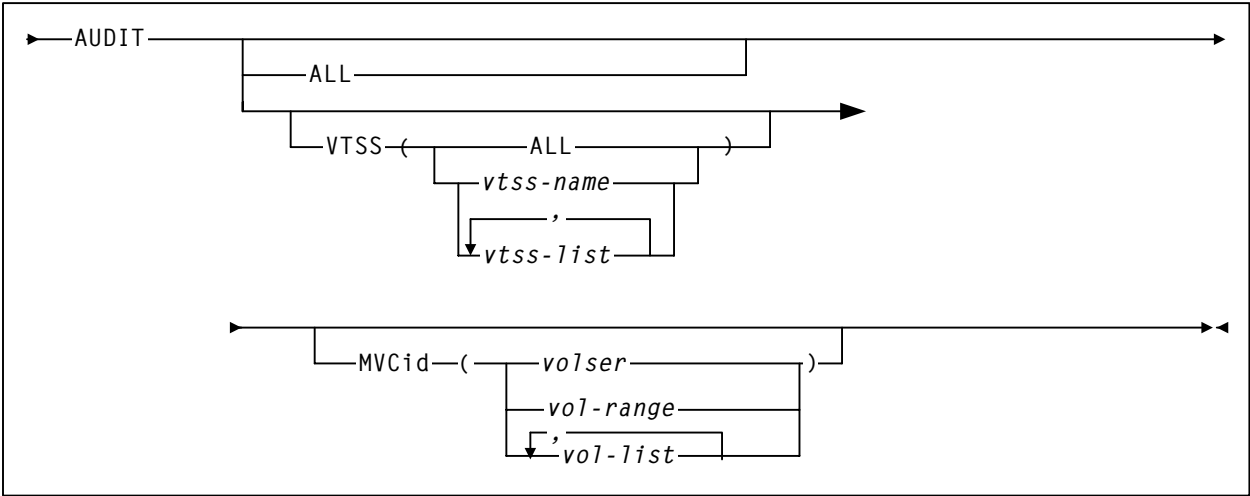


Figure 1. Audit *syntax*

## Parameters

**ALL**  
specifies an audit of your entire VSM system, including all VTSSs and all MVCs.



**Note:** The ALL parameter causes VTCS to attempt to audit all defined MVCs. If any MVC is outside the ACS, HSC will prompt you to enter the MVC into the correct LSM.

**VTSS**  
specifies an audit of one or more VTSSs.

**ALL**  
specifies all VTSSs.

*vtss-name* **or** *vtss-list*  
the names of one or more VTSSs.

**MVCid**  
specifies an audit of one or more MVCs.

*volser*, *vol-range* **or** *vol-list*  
the volsers of one or more MVCs.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.



## Usage

Use the AUDIT to update the MVC and VTV information in the HSC CDS.

When you run the AUDIT, VTCS splits the work into multiple audit subtasks which can use all available RTDs. The audit subtasks compete for RTDs with other VTCS tasks, such as recalls. When an audit subtask for an individual MVC completes, the RTD becomes available for other tasks, such as recalls or other audit subtasks.

Note, however, that VTCS will only run one AUDIT batch job at a time. If you submit multiple AUDIT batch jobs, all audit tasks for jobs after the first job submitted are queued behind tasks for the first job.

For more information on using AUDIT to do CDS recovery, see *VTCS Administrator's Guide*.

## JCL Requirements

The following are the required and optional statements for the AUDIT JCL:

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the AUDIT report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (AUDIT utility name and parameters).

## JCL Example

Figure 2 shows example JCL to run AUDIT for your entire VSM system.

```
//AUDIT      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN
//STEPLIB    DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN      DD *
            AUDIT ALL
```

**Figure 2. Example JCL for the AUDIT utility**

## Audit Report

An audit report lists the VTVs and MVCs that are different from those listed in the CDS as shown in Figure 3. In this figure, the report shows all MVCs or VTVs as new entries in the CDS, which is typical of the output of a VTCS audit run after you lost all copies of the CDS, then ran the recovery procedure described in “Usage” on page 5.

```

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)                                STORAGETEK VTCS SYSTEM UTILITY
TIME 03:15:42                                    VTCS AUDIT

AUDIT REPORT FOR MVC EVT500
X28955 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:00000000)
X20000 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:0940044D)
===== AUDIT OF MVC EVT500 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY =====

AUDIT REPORT FOR MVC EVT501
X28956 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:00000000)
X20007 VTV ADDED AS PRIMARY COPY (BLOCK:0940044D)
X20010 VTV ADDED AS SECONDARY COPY (BLOCK:11400899)
X20069 VTV NOT CURRENT (BLOCK:1A400CE5)
X20067 VTV NOT CURRENT (BLOCK:334016AB)
===== AUDIT OF MVC EVT501 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY =====

AUDIT REPORT FOR VTSS HBTSS17
X20000 VTV VALID
X20002 VTV VALID
X20005 VTV VALID
X20006 VTV VALID
X20007 VTV VALID
X30052 VTV VALID
X30053 VTV VALID
X30054 VTV VALID
===== AUDIT OF VTSS HBTSS17 COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY =====

AUDIT REPORT FOR VTSS HBTSS16
X20183 VTV VALID
X20185 VTV VALID
X20188 VTV VALID
X20190 VTV VALID
X20191 VTV VALID
X20194 VTV VALID
X41091 VTV VALID
X41093 VTV VALID
===== AUDIT OF VTSS HBTSS16 COMPLETED WITH 1 WARNING =====
AUDIT EXCEPTION REPORT

VTSS HBTSS16: 1 WARNINGS REPORTED
SLS1315I SWS500.V5.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET

```

**Figure 3. Example AUDIT utility report**



**Note:** An audit also generates:

- MVC summary and detail reports. For more information, see “Output” on page 44.
- Display VTSS summary and detail output. For more information, see “Output” on page 44.
- For every VTV resident on the VTSS, the VTV volser, size in Mb, and Management Class.

## Audit Report Messages

For every VTV found on an MVC or VTSS, the audit report lists one of following:

*vvvvvv VTV possibly corrupt (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** During the audit, an I/O error occurred for VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* on the MVC being audited.

*vvvvvv VTV not found [ , no MVC copies left ]*

**Explanation:** The audit did not find VTV *vvvvvv* on the MVC or VTSS being audited. If no MVC copies left appears, no MVCs contain copies of the VTV.

*vvvvvv VTV not found on CDS (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit expected but did not find VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* on the MVC being audited.

*vvvvvv VTV not current (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found a non-current copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* on the MVC being audited.

*vvvvvv VTV copy valid (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found a valid copy VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* of the MVC being audited; its location matches the CDS entry for the VTV.

*vvvvvv VTV Added as primary copy (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found the most current copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* of the MVC being audited; the audit added this location to the CDS as the primary MVC copy of the VTV.

*vvvvvv VTV Added as secondary copy (Block:bbbbbb)*

**Explanation:** The audit found the second most current copy of VTV *vvvvvv* at block *bbbbbb* of the MVC being audited; the audit added this location to the CDS as the secondary MVC copy of the VTV.

vvvvvv Duplicate copy ignored (Block:bbbbbb)

**Explanation:** The audit found a duplicate copy of VTV vvvvvv at block bbbbbbb and ignored this copy.

vvvvvv Link to old version on MVC mmmmmm removed

**Explanation:** The audit found a newer version of the VTV and removed the link to the old version from the CDS.

vvvvvv Old VTV version deleted from VTSS ssssssss

**Explanation:** The audit found an old version of the VTV and deleted it from the VTSS.

vvvvvv Old version of VTV retained [ VTSS ssssssss ]

**Explanation:** The audit found an old version of the VTV, which is the only copy, and retained this version. If VTSS ssssssss appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

vvvvvv Version older than MVC copies [ VTSS ssssssss ]

**Explanation:** The audit found an version of the VTV that is older than copies on the MVC. If VTSS ssssssss appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

vvvvvv Newer version of VTV found [ on VTSS ssssssss ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a newer version of the VTV and updated the CDS with this location. If on VTSS ssssssss appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

vvvvvv VTV discovered [ VTSS ssssssss ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a current version of the VTV on a VTSS whose location was unexpected and updated the CDS with this location. If on VTSS ssssssss appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

vvvvvv VTV valid [ VTSS ssssssss ]

**Explanation:** The audit found a valid version of the VTV and updated the CDS with this location. If VTSS ssssssss appears, the audit found the VTV on a different VTSS than the one that was audited.

\*\*\* vvvvvv no access to VTSS ssssssss \*\*\*

**Explanation:** The audit found a valid version of the VTV which is on a VTSS that the host cannot access.

MVC *mmmmmm* STATUS CHANGED FROM EXPORT TO CONSOLIDATE VOLUME

**Explanation:** The audit discovered current VTVs on an export MVC that was created by export by VTV or Management Class. The audit changed the MVC status from export to consolidate and updated the CDS to add the MVC and its VTVs.

EXPORT MVC *mmmmmm* IS NOW MADE EMPTY IN THE CDS

**Explanation:** The audit discovered no current VTVs on an export MVC that was created by export by VTV or Management Class. The audit marked the MVC as empty.

WARNING MVC *mmmmmm* IS AN OUTPUT MVC FROM AN EXPORT OPERATION -  
FORCING READONLY

**Explanation:** The audit forced read-only status on export MVC *mmmmmm*.

# CANCEL

CANce1 stops active and queued processes that use an RTD.

## Syntax

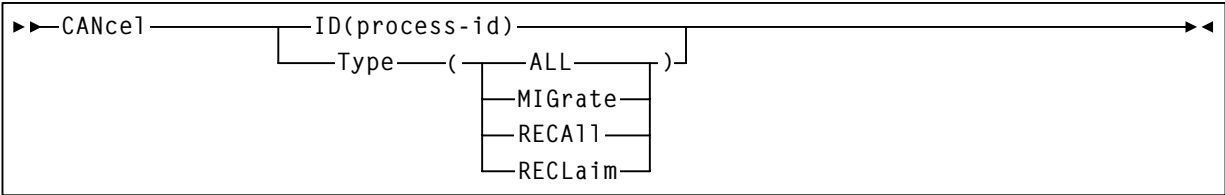


Figure 4. CANce1 syntax

## Parameters

- ID

specifies a process to cancel.

*process-id*

the process ID.
- Type

specifies the type of process to cancel.

ALL

cancel all processes.

MIGrate

cancel all migration processes.

RECA11

cancel all recall processes.

RECLaim

cancel all reclaim processes.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

**Usage**

For exception conditions only, use CANCEL to stop all active and queued processes. VTCS tries to stop processes without affecting system resources or information; therefore, the cancellation may not occur immediately. For example, VTCS may wait for hardware time out periods before terminating a process using a specific RTD. See “DISPLAY” on page 37 for information about determining process IDs.



If you cancel a parent request, you stop the parent and all child requests. If you cancel a child request, the parent request continues processing. See “Command Examples” on page 42 for an example of parent and child requests.



**Caution:** If you cancel a task associated with migration scheduler (either with the MIGRATE parameter or by specific process ID), this task will terminate but migration scheduler will start another migration task at its next timer interval. You can, however, use migrate-to-threshold to stop automigration by specifying a value greater than the current DBU. For more information, see “MIGRATE” on page 84.

**Command Example**

To cancel a process with an ID of 10, enter the following:

```
.VT CAN ID(10)
```

**JCL Requirements**

The following are the required and optional statements for the AUDIT JCL:

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the AUDIT report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (AUDIT utility name and parameters).

**JCL Example**

Figure 2 shows example JCL to cancel a process with an ID of 10.

```
//AUDIT      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN
//STEPLIB    DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN      DD *
CANCEL ID(10)
```

**Figure 5. Example JCL for the CANCEL utility**

## CONFIG

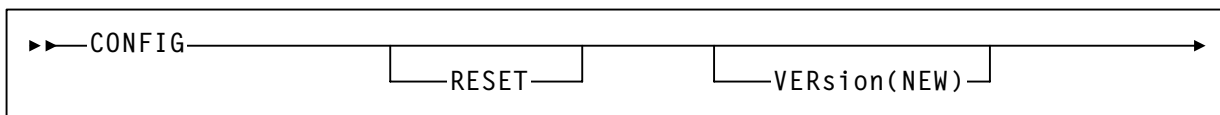
CONFIG defines or modifies the VSM configuration stored in the HSC CDS.

The following sections show the syntax of the CONFIG utility and of the input statements to CONFIG. As shown in “JCL Examples” on page 27, you create a single file that contains the CONFIG statement and its input statements.

### CONFIG Statement

The CONFIG statement specifies whether this a new or updated configuration (via the RESET parameter). This statement is required.

### Syntax



**Figure 6.** CONFIG *statement syntax*

### Parameters

#### RESET

specifies that VTCS will remove all previous RTD definitions at VTCS start-up. Figure 18 on page 28 shows a JCL example of an initial VSM system configuration, and Figure 19 on page 29 shows a JCL example to add RTDs to the initial configuration.

You **must** specify RESET when you make hardware changes such as:

- Adding a VTSS to your configuration.
- Adding RTDs, removing RTDs, or reordering their sequence.
- to your configuration.
- Physically removing a VTSS from your configuration.

You **do not** need to specify RESET if you:

- Change VSM volumes (such as adding VTVs and MVCs).
- Change VSM policies (such as changing AMT values).



**Note:** HSC must be down on all hosts when you run CONFIG RESET. The changes you made to RTD definitions will take effect when you restart HSC.

#### VERsion(NEW)

defines the CDS as VSM Extended Format.

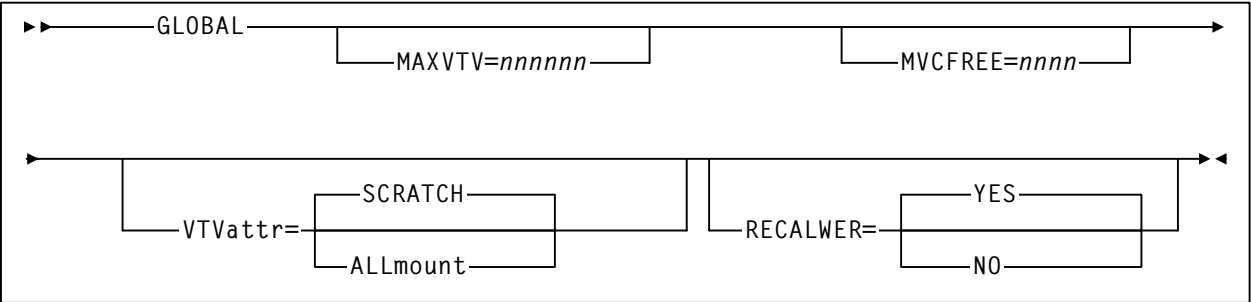
### Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.



**GLOBAL Statement**      The GLOBAL statement specifies global values for MVCs. This statement is required.

Syntax



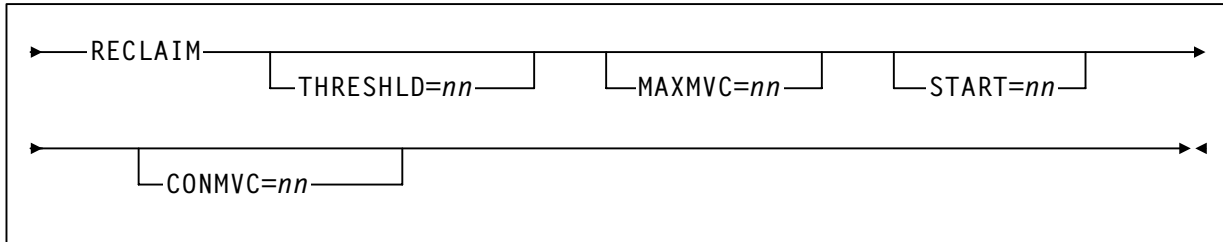
**Figure 7.** GLOBAL *statement syntax*

Parameters

- MAXVTV=nnn**  
specifies the maximum number of VTVs that can be migrated to a single MVC. Valid values are 4 to 32000. The default is 32000.
- MVCFREE=nnn**  
specifies the minimum number of free MVCs in the MVC pool. A free MVC has 100% usable space and does not contain any migrated VTVs. Valid values are 0 to 255. The default is 40.  
If free MVCs is equal or less than this value, VTCS issues message SLS6616I and starts an automatic space reclamation.
- Note:** If you set MVCFREE=0, VTCS actually uses the default value (40).
- VTVattr=SCRATCH | ALLmount**  
specifies when VTCS assigns a Management Class to a VTV.
- SCRATCH**  
Assign a Management Class only when VTCS does a scratch mount of the VTV (the default).
- ALLmount**  
Assign a Management Class whenever VTCS mounts the VTV.
- RECALWER**  
specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks (applies to recall and drain operations).
- YES**  
recall VTVs with read data checks (the default).
- NO**  
Do not recall VTVs with read data checks.

**RECLAIM Statement** The RECLAIM statement controls demand and automatic MVC space reclamation. This statement is required.

### Syntax



**Figure 8.** RECLAIM *statement syntax*

### Parameters

#### THRESHLD=*nn*

specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. The default is 40.

#### MAXMVC=*nn*

specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by a single space reclamation task. Valid values are 1 to 98. The default is 40.

For automatic space reclamation to start, the number of eligible MVCs (determined by the THRESHLD parameter) must also exceed the MAXMVC value.

#### START=*nn*

specifies the level at which automatic space reclamation starts for each ACS (not globally for all ACSs). Specify a percentage value, which is equal to:

$$(\text{Reclaim Candidates} / \text{Reclaim Candidates} + \text{Free MVCs}) * 100$$

Where:

*Reclaim Candidates*

is the number of Reclaim Candidates determined by the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD parameter.

*Reclaim Candidates + Free MVCs*

equals the number of Reclaim Candidates plus the number of free MVCs. Valid values are 1 to 98. The default is 35.

#### CONMVC=*nn*

specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim.

Valid values are 1 to 99. The default is 1.

## VTVVOL Statement

The VTVVOL statement defines a range of VTVs.

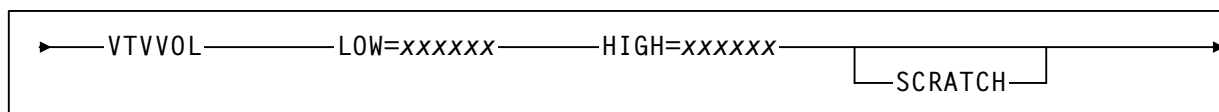
You can only add new VTV ranges. A range can consist of a single volume. You cannot delete or modify existing ranges. You can, however, respecify existing VTV ranges when you add new ranges (for example, by adding new VTV ranges to the output of the DECOM utility).



**Note:** The following restrictions when you respecify existing ranges:

- If you respecify any existing range, you must respecify all existing ranges.
- The high and low volume serial numbers of each respecified range must exactly match the previously specified range.
- The volume type for each respecified range must be the same as the original specification (MVC or VTV).
- Each range can be respecified only once.

## Syntax



**Figure 9.** VTVVOL *statement syntax*

## Parameters

LOW=xxxxxx

specifies the start of a range of VTVs.

HIGH=xxxxxx

specifies the end of a range of VTVs.

SCRATCH

specifies that the VTVs added to the CDS are placed in scratch status, which is not the default for the VTVVOL parameter.



**Warning:** If you are using the ExLM SYNCVTV function for VTV scratch synchronization, StorageTek recommends that you define VTV ranges in scratch status. If you do not, you must use the HSC SLUADMIN utility to scratch these volumes.

## MVCVOL Statement

The MVCVOL statement defines a range of MVCs available to VTCS.

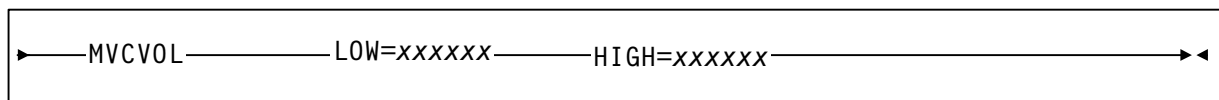
You can only add new MVC ranges. A range can consist of a single volume. You cannot delete or modify existing ranges. You can, however, respecify existing MVC ranges when you add new ranges (for example, by adding new MVC ranges to the output of the DECOM utility).



**Note:** The following restrictions when you respecify existing ranges:

- If you respecify any existing range, you must respecify all existing ranges.
- The high and low volume serial numbers of each respecified range must exactly match the previously specified range.
- The volume type for each respecified range must be the same as the original specification (MVC or VTV).
- Each range can be respecified only once.

## Syntax



**Figure 10. MVCVOL statement syntax**

## Parameters

LOW=xxxxxx

specifies the start of a range of MVCs.

HIGH=xxxxxx

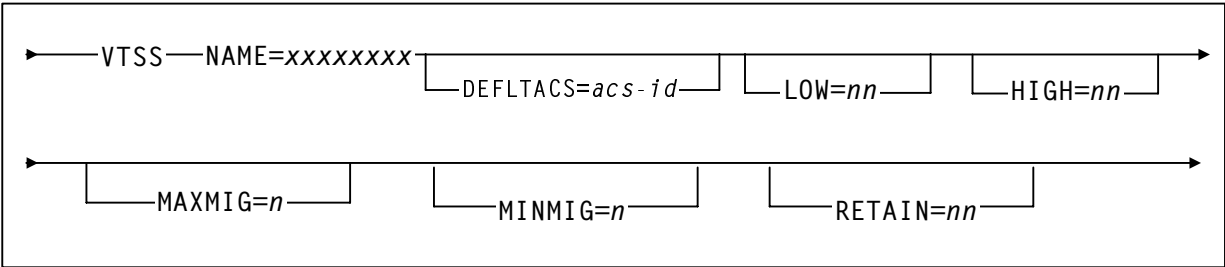
specifies the end of a range of MVCs.

**VTSS Statement**

The VTSS statement defines a VTSS and sets its operating values. This statement is required.

When you define a new VTSS, place its definition after any existing VTSS definitions, which must remain in their original order. You must specify RESET when you add a VTSS to your configuration as described in “RESET” on page 12.

Syntax



**Figure 11.** VTSS *statement syntax*

Parameters



**Note:** If you physically remove a VTSS from your configuration, reconfigure the VTSS with a VTSS statement only and no parameters. See Figure 21 on page 31 for an example.

NAME=xxxxxxx

specifies the VTSS identifier. This parameter is required; there is no default value.



**Caution:** Note the following:

- You specify the VTSS identifier *only* via the NAME parameter, which sets the VTSS identifier in both the VTSS microcode (as displayed in the Subsystem Name field in the LOP) and in the configuration area of the HSC CDS. After VSM is put into operation, the VTSS identifier is also stored in each VTV record in the CDS. Each VTV record contains the VTSS identifier on which that VTV is resident or, if the VTV is migrated, the VTV record contains the VTSS identifier from which the VTV was migrated.

- Once you set the VTSS identifier via the NAME parameter, you *cannot* change this identifier in the HSC CDS. That is, the CONFIG utility *will not* let you change the NAME parameter after an initial setting and changing the VTSS identifier using the Subsystem Name field of the LOP *cannot* change the VTSS identifier in the HSC CDS.
- It is especially critical that you *do not* attempt to rename a VTSS that contains data on VTVs, which includes VTSS-resident VTVs and migrated VTVs!
- For an initial setting *only* (not a change), you can set the VTSS identifier in the NAME parameter only if the VTSS identifier value in the VTSS microcode is:
  - The factory setting (all blanks).
  - A value of 99999999 (eight 9s).

Therefore, for an initial setting *only*, if the name in the VTSS microcode *is not* all blanks or 99999999, your StorageTek hardware representative must use the VTSS LOP to set the VTSS identifier to 99999999 so you can set the VTSS identifier to the value you want via the NAME parameter.

DEFLTACS=*acs-id*

VTCS supports multi-VTSS confirmations, and supports connecting two ACSs to each VTSS. In configurations where a VTSS is connected to two ACSs, you can use the DEFLTACS parameter to specify the default ACS from which MVCs will be selected for migration, consolidation, and reclaim processing.

If you do not specify DEFLTACS, the default value is x'FF', which allows VTCS to select MVCs from either ACS.



**Note:** VTCS ignores the value on the DEFLTACS parameter if you specify the DEFLTACS parameter and do either of the following:

- Specify the ACSlist parameter of the MGMTclas statement.
- Use a Storage Class.

LOW=*nn*

specifies the low automatic migration threshold (LAMT) for this VTSS.

Valid values are 5 to 95 and must be less than the HIGH default threshold. The default is 70.

HIGH=*nn*

specifies the high automatic migration threshold (HAMT) for this VTSS.

Valid values are 6 to 95 and must be greater than the LOW default threshold. The default is 80.

**MAXMIG=*n***

specifies the maximum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks for this VTSS.

Valid values are 1 to the number of RTDs on the VTSS. The default is half the number of RTDs attached to the VTSS.

**MINMIG=*n***

specifies the minimum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks for this VTSS.

Valid values are 1 to the MAXMIG setting. The default is 1 task.

**RETAIN=*nn***

specifies the number of minutes that VTCS will retain an MVC on an RTD in idle mode after a migration. Retaining the MVC can reduce MVC mounts.

Valid values are 1 to 60. The default is 10.

### RTD Statement

The RTD statement defines the RTDs connected to the VTSS. This statement is required and must follow the VTSS statement that defines the VTSS to which the RTDs are connected. For a VSM2 or VSM3, you can specify a maximum of 8 RTDs. For a VSM4, you can specify a maximum of 16 RTDs.



**Note:** You must specify the RESET parameter to change RTD definitions; for more information, see “RESET” on page 12. For an initial RTD definition, if the RTD name displayed at the VTSS LOP is anything other than all blanks, you must also specify RESET.

## Syntax



**Figure 12.** RTD *statement syntax*

## Parameters

NAME=XXXXXXXX

specifies the 1 to 8 character identifier of the RTD.

You set or change the RTD identifier *only* via the RTD NAME parameter; to do so, the RTD identifier must be all blanks as displayed at the VTSS LOP.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

DEVNO=nnnn

specifies the unit address of the RTD.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

CHANIF=nn

specifies the channel interface on the VTSS that communicates with the RTD. This value must match the Nearlink channel interface defined at the VTSS LOP by your StorageTek hardware representative at VTSS installation and configuration.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

The value must be two characters in length and have a value from 0A to 1P. The first digit is the VTSS cluster ID (valid values are 0 or 1). The second digit is the group or adapter ID (valid values are A to P).



**Caution:** Do not use the LINK number shown at the LOP instead of the VTSS cluster ID for the first character of the CHANID value!



## VTD Statement

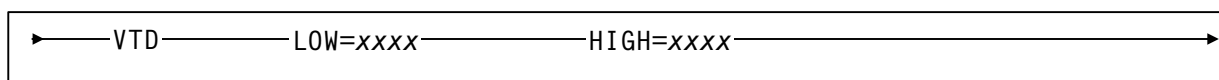
The VTD statement defines the MVS unit address range of the VTDs in a VTSS. This statement is required.



**Note:** VSM2s and VSM3s provide 64 VTDs per VTSS. VSM4s provide 256 VTDs per VTSS.

You can specify the VTD unit addresses to either apply to all hosts or to define which VTDs are available to specific hosts; for more information, see “Specifying VTD Unit Addresses” on page 26.

## Syntax



**Figure 13. VTD statement syntax**

## Parameters

LOW=XXXX

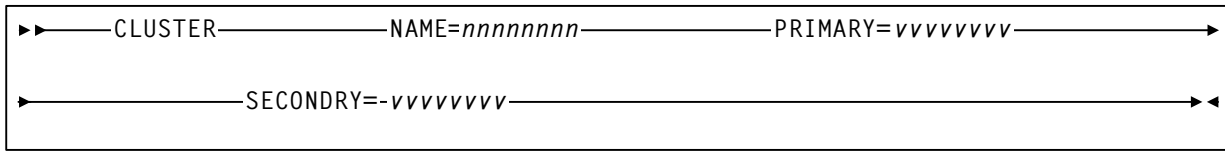
specifies a four character valid MVS unit address as the start of a range of VTDs.

HIGH=XXXX

specifies a four character valid MVS unit address as the end of a range of VTDs.

**CLUSTER Statement**     The CLUSTER statement defines the Primary and Secondary VTSSs in a Cluster.

### Syntax



**Figure 14.** CLUSTER *statement syntax*

### Parameters

NAME=nnnnnnnn

specifies the 1 to 8 character identifier of the Cluster.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

PRIMARY=vvvvvvvv

specifies the Primary VTSS name.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

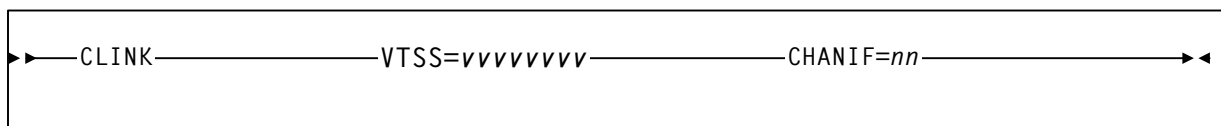
SECONDRY=vvvvvvvv

specifies the Secondary VTSS name.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

**CLINK Statement**

The CLINK statement defines the channel interface between Primary and Secondary VTSSs in a Cluster.

**Syntax**

**Figure 15.** CLINK *statement syntax*

**Parameters**

VTSS=vvvvvvvvv

specifies the name of the Primary VTSS in a Cluster.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

CHANIF=nn

specifies the channel interface for communication between the Primary and Secondary VTSSs in a Cluster. This value must match the Nearlink channel interface defined at the VTSS LOP by your StorageTek hardware representative at VTSS installation and configuration.

This parameter is required; there is no default value.

The value must be two characters in length and have a value from 0A to 1P. The first digit is the VTSS Cluster ID (valid values are 0 or 1). The second digit is the group or adapter ID (valid values are A to P).



**Caution:** Do not use the LINK number shown at the LOP instead of the VTSS Cluster ID for the first character of the CHANIF value!

## HOST Statement

The HOST statement is an optional statement that defines an MVS host and, optionally, the NOMIGRAT and/or NORECLAM parameters.

Note the following:

- If specified, the HOST statement must follow the VTSS statement for the VTSS attached to that host.
- You must either specify all host definitions or none; if you specify only some of the hosts attached to a VTSS, VTCS will issue an error.

## Syntax



**Figure 16.** HOST *statement syntax*

## Parameters

NAME=xxxx

specifies the LIBGENed hostname.

NOMIGRAT

specifies that this host cannot do migrations, consolidations, or export by VTV or Management Class from the VTSS(s) that the host accesses. NOMIGRAT controls both automatic and demand migrations and consolidations. This parameter is optional.



**Note:** Specifying NOMIGRAT also causes NORECLAM to be set.

IMMEDmig KEEP and IMMEdmig DELETE are mutually exclusive with CONFIG HOST NOMIGRAT. If you specify both, the IMMEdmig value overrides NOMIGRAT, and VTCS does not issue a message about this override.

NORECLAM

specifies that this host cannot initiate automatic or demand reclaim processing using the VTSS(s) that the host accesses (the host can still do demand MVC drains via MVCDRain). This parameter is optional.

## Usage

Use the CONFIG utility to define or modify the VSM configuration stored in the HSC CDS. An asterisk (\*) in column 1 denotes comments in the file that contains the CONFIG utility statements.

You typically run the CONFIG utility when you:

- Initially install and configure your VSM system; see Figure 17 on page 27 and Figure 18 on page 28 for examples.
- Change VSM hardware (such as adding RTDs); see Figure 19 on page 29 for an example.
- Change VSM volumes (such as adding VTVs and MVCs); see Figure 20 on page 30 for an example.
- Change VSM policies (such as AMT values); see Figure 20 on page 30 for an example.
- Physically remove a VTSS from your configuration, see Figure 21 on page 31 for an example.



**Note:** You must specify RESET to change your existing RTD definitions by adding RTDs, removing RTDs, or reordering the sequence of RTDs; see “RESET” on page 12. HSC must be down on all hosts when you run CONFIG RESET. The changes you made to RTD definitions will take effect when you restart HSC. You must also specify RESET when you add a VTSS to your configuration.

You can run CONFIG without RESET concurrently with an active HSC, but you must then restart HSC for the changes to take effect.

## Specifying VTD Unit Addresses

You can specify VTD addresses by doing one of the following:

- Specify the VTD unit addresses on a VTD statement following a VTSS statement and do *not* specify any HOST statements following the VTSS statement. All hosts physically connected to the VTSS have access to its VTDs by the default addresses specified on the VTD statement. See Figure 17 on page 27 for an example of this configuration.
- Do *not* specify the VTD unit addresses on the VTD statement following a VTSS statement. Instead, place a VTD statement after a HOST statement for only those hosts for which you want to define connections to the previously defined VTSS. You must specify a placeholder (HOST NAME with no VTD parameter) for any hosts that you do not want connected to this VTSS.

Note that the VTDs created and MVCs initially written to from a VTSS are considered that VTSS's resources, so only hosts with access to a VTSS also have access to its VTDs and MVCs. In this type of "restricted" access configuration, therefore, each host should have a separate VTD scratch pool to ensure that each host has accurate scratch counts. Similarly, free MVCs and MVC reclaim counts are reported on each host for the MVCs associated with the VTSS to which the host is connected.

See Figure 18 on page 28 for an example of this configuration. You can specify different address ranges for each host, although StorageTek recommends that you specify the same address ranges for all hosts for consistency of operations. If you specify different address ranges for different hosts, the UNITATTR statement on each host must match the VTD statement address ranges for that HOST statement.



**Caution:** In a multi-host, multi-VTSS configuration, you can use this VTD addressing method to deny access to VTSSs to which hosts are physically connected. You **must**, however, use this method to deny access from hosts that are *not* physically connected to a VTSS. If you do not deny access, VTCS on a host that does not have physical connections to a VTSS may wait trying to communicate with the VTSS while VSM operations may be stalled on all other hosts.

## JCL Requirements

### STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

### SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the CONFIG report.

### SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (CONFIG utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples



**Note:** See *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide* for VSM4 CONFIG examples.

CONFIG Example:  
VSM2 or VSM3 Initial  
Configuration - All  
Hosts Access All  
VTDs

Figure 17 shows example CONFIG JCL to initially define a VSM2 or VSM3 configuration as follows:

- The VTD statements specify default VTD addresses 8900 - 893F for VTSS1 and addresses 9900 - 993F for VTSS2.
- No HOST statements follow the VTSS statements, so all hosts have access to all VTDs in both VTSSs by the default addresses specified on the VTD statements.

```
//CREATECFG EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
CONFIG
GLOBAL MAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40
RECLAIM THRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35
VTVVOL LOW=905000 HIGH=999999 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=C00000 HIGH=C25000 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=RMM000 HIGH=RMM020 SCRATCH
MVCVOL LOW=N25980 HIGH=N25989
MVCVOL LOW=N35000 HIGH=N35999
VTSS NAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSS NAME=VTSS2 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS28804 DEVNO=8804 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807 CHANIF=1I
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
```

**Figure 17.** CONFIG example: initial VSM2 or VSM3 configuration, all hosts access all VTDs

CONFIG Example:  
Initial Configuration -  
All Hosts Access  
VTDs in One VTSS,  
Only Selected Hosts  
Access VTDs in  
Second VTSS

Figure 18 shows example CONFIG JCL to initially define a VSM configuration as follows:

- The VTD statement specifies default VTD addresses 8900 - 893F for VTSS1. All hosts have access to these VTDs by their default addresses.
- No default VTD addresses are specified for VTSS2. The HOST statements for MVS1 and MVS2 specify that only these hosts can access the VTDs in VTSS2 by the addresses 9900 - 993F. HOST statement MVS3 is a placeholder; this host cannot access the VTDs in VTSS2.

```
//CREATECFG EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
CONFIG
GLOBAL MAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40
RECLAIM THRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35
VTVOL LOW=905000 HIGH=999999 SCRATCH
VTVOL LOW=C00000 HIGH=C25000 SCRATCH
VTVOL LOW=RMM000 HIGH=RMM020 SCRATCH
MVCVOL LOW=N25980 HIGH=N25989
MVCVOL LOW=N35000 HIGH=N35999
VTSS NAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VT128800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSS NAME=VTSS2 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS28804 DEVNO=8804 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807 CHANIF=1I
HOST NAME=MVS1
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
HOST NAME=MVS2
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
HOST NAME=MVS3 NOMIGRAT NORECLAM
```

**Figure 18.** CONFIG example: initial configuration, all hosts access VTDs in one VTSS, selected hosts access VTDs in second VTSS



**CONFIG Example:  
Update Configuration  
to Add RTDs**

Figure 19 shows example JCL to run CONFIG to add RTDs VTS18811 and VTS18813 (connected to VTSS1) to the configuration shown in Figure 18 on page 28. In this example, you specify the RESET parameter to clear the existing RTD definitions, then respecify the existing RTDs and add new definitions for RTDs VTS18811 and VTS18813.

```
//UPDATECFG EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASETBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
CONFIG RESET
GLOBAL MAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40
RECLAIM THRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35
VTVVOL LOW=905000 HIGH=999999 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=C00000 HIGH=C25000 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=RMM000 HIGH=RMM020 SCRATCH
MVCVOL LOW=N25980 HIGH=N25989
MVCVOL LOW=N35000 HIGH=N35999
VTSS NAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
RTD NAME=VTS18811 DEVNO=8811 CHANIF=0E
RTD NAME=VTS18813 DEVNO=8813 CHANIF=1E
VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSS NAME=VTSS2 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS28804 DEVNO=8804 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807 CHANIF=1I
HOST NAME=MVS1
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
HOST NAME=MVS2
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
HOST NAME=MVS3
```

**Figure 19.** CONFIG example: updating configuration to add RTDs

**CONFIG Example:**  
Update Configuration  
to Add MVCs and  
VTVs and Change  
AMTs

Figure 20 shows example JCL to run CONFIG to modify the configuration shown in Figure 19 on page 29 by:

- Respecifying the existing VTV and MVC ranges.
- Adding VTVs C25001 to C50000 as scratch.
- Adding MVCs N45000 to N45999. For more information about adding MVCs to VSM.
- Changing the LAMT to 50 and the HAMT to 85 on both VTSS1 and VTSS2.

```
//UPDATECFG EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASETBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
CONFIG
GLOBAL MAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40
RECLAIM THRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35
VTVVOL LOW=905000 HIGH=999999 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=C00000 HIGH=C25000 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=RMM000 HIGH=RMM020 SCRATCH
VTVVOL LOW=C25001 HIGH=C50000 SCRATCH
MVCVOL LOW=N25980 HIGH=N25989
MVCVOL LOW=N35000 HIGH=N35999
MVCVOL LOW=N45000 HIGH=N45999
VTSS NAME=VTSS1 LOW=50 HIGH=85 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
RTD NAME=VTS18811 DEVNO=8811 CHANIF=0E
RTD NAME=VTS18813 DEVNO=8813 CHANIF=1E
VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSS NAME=VTSS2 LOW=50 HIGH=85 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
RTD NAME=VTS28804 DEVNO=8804 CHANIF=0A
RTD NAME=VTS28805 DEVNO=8805 CHANIF=0I
RTD NAME=VTS28806 DEVNO=8806 CHANIF=1A
RTD NAME=VTS28807 DEVNO=8807 CHANIF=1I
HOST NAME=MVS1
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
HOST NAME=MVS2
VTD LOW=9900 HIGH=993F
HOST NAME=MVS3
```

**Figure 20.** CONFIG example: updating configuration to add MVCs and VTVs and change AMTs

**CONFIG Example:  
Denying Host Access  
to a Physically  
Removed VTSS**

Figure 21 shows example JCL to run CONFIG to update the configuration shown in Figure 18 on page 28 to deny host access to VTSS2 that you physically removed from your configuration. In this example, you:

- Specify the RESET parameter to clear the existing RTD definitions.
- Respecify the VTSS statement for VTSS2 with no parameters to deny host access to this VTSS.

```
//UPDATECFG EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASETBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
CONFIG RESET
GLOBAL MAXVTV=32000 MVCFREE=40
RECLAIM THRESHLD=70 MAXMVC=40 START=35
VTSS NAME=VTSS1 LOW=70 HIGH=80 MAXMIG=3 RETAIN=5
      RTD NAME=VTS18800 DEVNO=8800 CHANIF=0A
      RTD NAME=VTS18801 DEVNO=8801 CHANIF=0I
      RTD NAME=VTS18802 DEVNO=8802 CHANIF=1A
      RTD NAME=VTS18803 DEVNO=8803 CHANIF=1I
      RTD NAME=VTS18811 DEVNO=8811 CHANIF=0E
      RTD NAME=VTS18813 DEVNO=8813 CHANIF=1E
      VTD LOW=8900 HIGH=893F
VTSS NAME=VTSS2
```

**Figure 21.** CONFIG example: updating configuration to deny host access to a physically removed VTSS

## CONSolid

CONSolid consolidates VTVs on MVCs; for more information, see “Usage” on page 33.

### Syntax

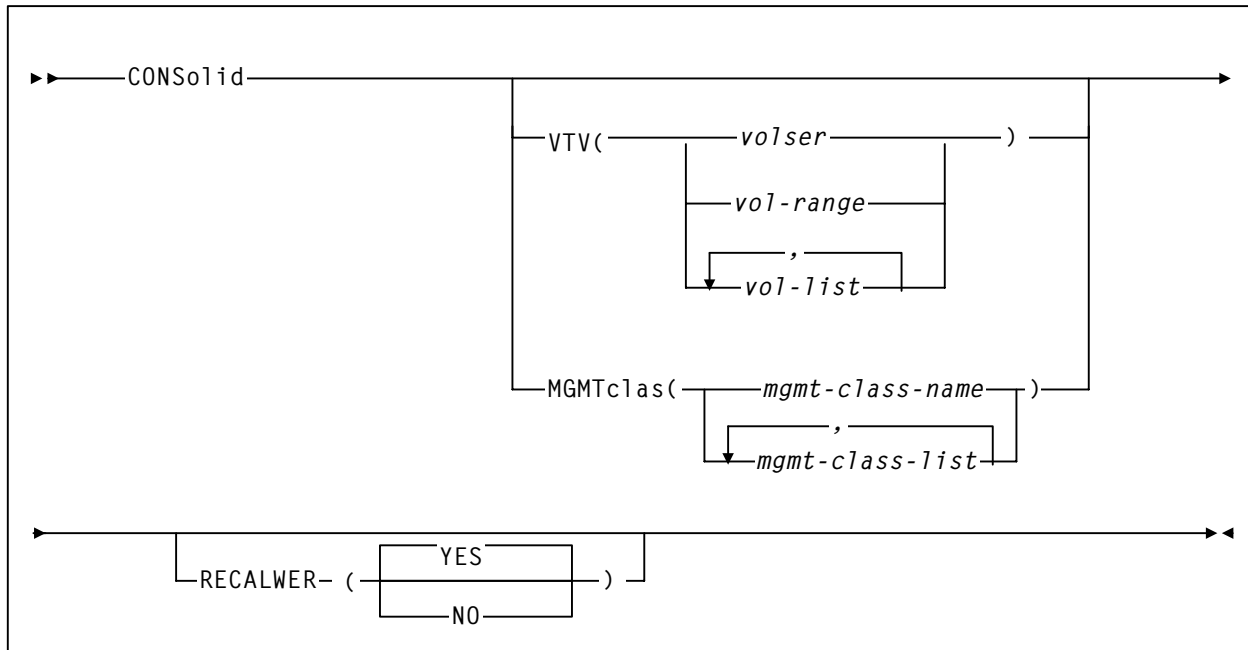


Figure 22. CONSolid *utility syntax*

### Parameters

#### VTV

specifies one or more VTVs to consolidate.

*volser*, *vol-range* **or** *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs. You can specify a maximum of 2,000 VTVs.

#### MGMTclas

specifies the names of one or more Management Classes that determine the VTVs to consolidate.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177. You can consolidate a maximum of 2,000 VTVs by specifying a Management Class.

#### RECALWER

specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

YES

recall VTVs with read data checks (the default).

NO

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility only.

**Usage**

The following sections tell how to use the CONSolid utility to consolidate VTVs on MVCs:

- “Consolidating VTVs by Specifying VTVs on the VTV Parameter”
- “Consolidating VTVs by Specifying a Management Class on the MGMTclas Parameter”



**Note:** If you need to run a VSM audit, rerun any consolidation jobs that may have been impacted by the loss of the CDS or VSM resources. For more information, see *VTCS Administrator's Guide*.

**Consolidating VTVs  
by Specifying VTVs  
on the VTV Parameter**

You can consolidate VTVs by specifying VTVs on the VTV parameter. VTCS will consolidate every VTV you specify that is not mounted, non-scratch, not in-use or in recovery, and not already consolidated.

To use this method, first run a tape management system or ExLM data set name report to select the VTVs to consolidate. Figure 23 on page 35 shows a JCL example of specifying VTVs to consolidate on the VTV parameter.

## Consolidating VTVs by Specifying a Management Class on the MGMTclas Parameter



You can also consolidate VTVs by specifying a Management Class or list of Management Classes on the MGMTclas parameter.

### To consolidate VTVs by specifying a Management Class, do the following:

#### 1. Define a Management Class or use an existing Management Class.

**Note:** Note if the Management Class you use for consolidation specifies the DUPlex parameter, duplexing is ignored for consolidation for this Management Class but duplexing *is* supported for migration for this Management Class.

#### 2. Create a TAPEREQ statement or use the HSC/DFSMS interface to route data to the Management Class you defined in Step 1.

#### 3. Use the CONSolid utility to specify the Management Class you defined in Step 1.

The CONSolid utility will query the CDS to determine which VTVs have been created with this Management Class, then build a list of VTVs to consolidate. VTCS consolidates all VTVs in the list that are not mounted, non-scratch, not in-use or in recovery, and not already consolidated.

## JCL Requirements

### STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

### SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the CONSolid report.

### SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (CONSolid utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples

Figure 23 shows example JCL to run the CONSolid utility. In this example, the VTV parameter specifies consolidating VTV100 to VTV200.

```
//CONSOLIDATE EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
CONS VTV(VTV100 - VTV200)
```

**Figure 23. CONSolid utility example: specifying VTVs to consolidate**

Figure 24 shows example JCL to run the CONSolid utility. In this example, the MGMT parameter specifies consolidating VTVs in Management Class PAYRVLT.

```
//CONSOLIDATE EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
CONS MGMT(PAYRVLT)
```

**Figure 24. CONSolid example: specifying Management Class to consolidate**

## Consolidation Reports

The consolidation report displays the following messages:

MIGRATE ONLY FROM VTSS *vtssname*

**Explanation:** The VTV is resident on VTSS *vtssname*.

REMIGRATE FROM MVC *mvname* VIA VTSS *vtssname*

**Explanation:** VTCS is recalling a VTV from MVC *mvname* to consolidate the VTV.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV IS SCRATCH

**Explanation:** VTCS will not consolidate the specified VTV, which is either scratch or not initialized.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV ALREADY CONSOLIDATED

**Explanation:** The specified VTV is already consolidated.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV RECORD NOT FOUND

**Explanation:** VTCS will not consolidate the specified VTV, which has no record in the CDS.

VTV *vtvname* NOT SELECTED; VTV STILL MOUNTED ON DRIVE

**Explanation:** VTCS cannot consolidate the specified VTV, which is mounted or in recovery.

REDRIVING REQUEST BECAUSE OF ERROR

**Explanation:** VTCS is retrying an unsuccessful consolidation request.

CONSOLID CMD PROBLEM DECODING VCI REQUEST FROM HSC

**Explanation:** The consolidation failed.

VTV *vtvnumber* NOT SELECTED: LIMITED ACCESS TO VTSS

**Explanation:** The consolidation request failed because a host not enabled for consolidation (via the NOMIGRAT parameter) issued the request.

MIGRATE NO MVCS AVAILABLE

**Explanation:** Sufficient free MVCs are not available to complete the request.

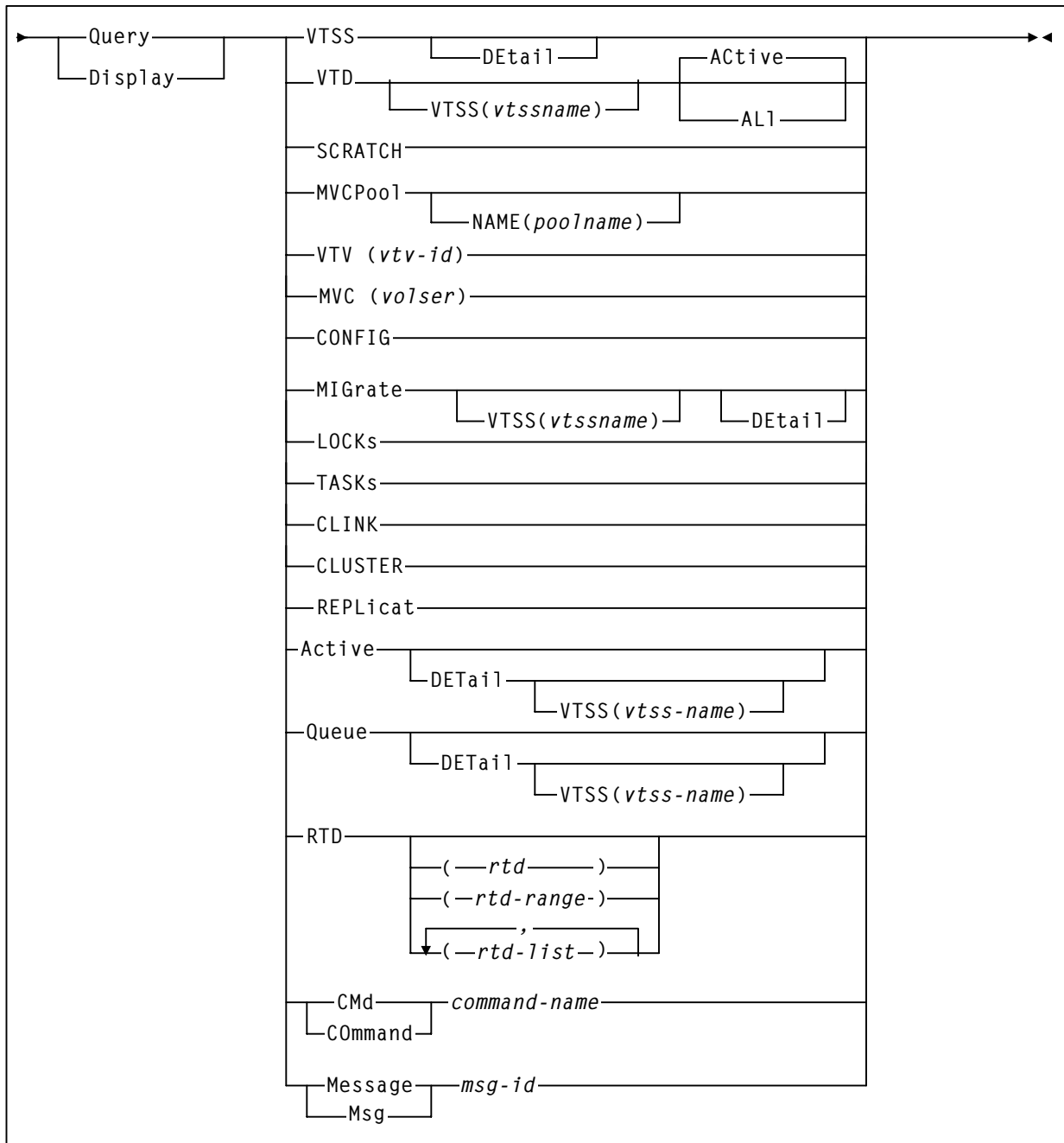


## DISPLAY

Display displays the status of the following:

- VTSSs.
- VTDs.
- RTD usage or the status of active or queued processes that use an RTD. Use Display to determine the ID of a process you want to cancel with the CANCEL on page 10.
- Scratch subpools.
- MVC pools.
- Specific VTVs and MVCs.
- CONFIG parameter settings.
- Migrations.
- Tasks.
- Locks.
- Cluster links.
- Clusters.
- VTV replications.
- Usage information about a VTCS command or help information about an HSC message (including but not limited to the messages listed in the “HSC Messages for VTCS Events” section of *VTCS Messages*).

## Syntax



**Figure 25.** Query/Display *syntax*

**Parameters**

VTSS	display VTSS information.
DETAil	display detailed host status.
VTD	display VTD information. Lists and ranges of RTDs are limited to 64 items for VSM2s and VSM3s and 256 items for VSM4s.
VTSS	display status for the VTDs connected to the specified VTSS. <i>vtss-name</i> the VTSS name.
ACtive   ALl	display status for VTDs that have VTVs mounted (ACtive) or all VTDs (ALl).
SCRATCH	display scratch subpool information.
MVCPool	display MVC pool information.
NAME	display information for the specified Named MVC Pool. <i>poolname</i> the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPool control statement; for more information, see “MVCPOOL Control Statement” on page 188. Alternatively, you can specify ALL to display information for all Named MVC pools (including the default pool DEFAULTPOOL).
VTV	display information about a specific VTV. <i>vtv-id</i> the ID of the VTV.
MVC	display information about a specific MVC. <i>volser</i> the volser of the MVC.
CONFIG	display CONFIG parameter settings.

**MIGrate**  
 display migration status.

**DETail**  
 display migration status by Storage Class.

**VTSS**  
 the VTSS whose migration status you want to display.  
*vtssname*  
 the VTSS identifier.

**TASKs**  
 display task status.

**LOCKs**  
 display lock status.

**CLINK**  
 display Cluster link status.

**CLUSTER**  
 display Cluster status.

**REPLicat**  
 display VTV replication status.

**Active**  
 display active processes.

**DETail**  
 display detailed status.

**VTSS**  
 display processes for the specified VTSS.  
*vtss-name*  
 the VTSS name.

**Queue**  
 display queued processes.

**DETail**  
 display detailed status.

**VTSS**  
 display processes for the specified VTSS.  
*vtss-name*  
 the VTSS name.

**RTD**  
 display usage information for the specified RTDs. Lists and ranges of RTDs are limited to 8 items for VSM2s and VSM3s and 16 items for VSM4s.  
*rtd-id*, *rtd-range*, or *rtd-list*  
 the unit addresses of one or more RTDs.

CMD or Command

display syntax and use information for a VTCS command.

*cmd-name*

the command name.

Msg or Message

display detailed HSC message information.

*msg-id*

the four-digit numerical portion of the message identifier. Leading zeros are not required.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility and VT command **except** for the following, which are only valid as commands:

- VT Display CMD or VT Query CMD
- VT Display MSG or VT Query MSG

## Usage

Use DISPLAY to display the status of the VSM system, including the following:

- The capacity, VTSS count, and operating policies for all VTSSs
- VTD configuration and usage
- RTD usage or the status of active or queued processes that use an RTD.
- Available scratches in each scratch subpool
- The number of free MVCs and reclaim candidates in each ACS (optionally, by Named MVC Pool)
- Information about specific VTVs and MVCs
- CONFIG parameter settings
- Migrations
- Tasks
- Locks
- Cluster links
- Clusters
- VTV replications
- Usage information about a VTCS command or help information about an HSC message (including but not limited to the messages listed in the “HSC Messages for VTCS Events” section of *VTCS Messages*.)

**Command Examples**

To display the number of free MVCs and MVC reclaim candidates in each MVC pool, enter:

```
.VT QU MVCP
```

To display detailed status of all active processes, enter:

```
.VT QU A DET
```



**Note:** Display shows both parent and child requests. All child requests appear immediately after their parent requests. This includes children of children. For example, Figure 26 shows example of the output from the following command:

```
.VT QU A DET
```

FUNCTION	ID	VTV	MVC	RTD	VTSS
DRAIN@	02064	-	-	-	-
MVCDRain	02065=	-	022522	-	-
VTVmover	02066=	-	022522	-	-
Recall	02069=	Y03054	022522	2A07	HBVTSS19
Migrate	02070=	Y05088	022680	2A08	HBVTSS19

**Figure 26. Example output from a Display Active DETail command: parent and child requests**

In Figure 26, the function DRAIN@ has the parent request ID of 00191 and the subsequent child requests (indicated by the equal sign (=)).

**JCL Requirements**

The following are the required and optional statements for the MVC RPT JCL:

**STEPLIB**

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

**SLSPRINT**

specifies the destination for the MVC report.

**SLSIN**

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MVC RPT utility name and parameters).

**SYSOUT**

specifies the output destination for SORT messages. This is only required for DETAIL MVC reports.

## JCL Examples

Figure 27 shows example JCL to display the number of free MVCs and MVC reclaim candidates in each MVC pool.

```
//MVCR      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB   DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//MVCOUT    DD DSN=FEDB.FLAT,UNIT=SYSALLDA,DISP=OLD
//SLSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT    DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN     DD *
           QU MVCP
```

**Figure 27. Example JCL to display the number of free MVCs and MVC reclaim candidates in each MVC pool**

Figure 28 shows example JCL to display detailed status of all active processes.

**Figure 28. Example JCL to display detailed status of all active processes**

## Output

**Display VTSS Output**      Figure 29 shows an example of Display VTSS output.

VTSSNAME	CPCTY (MB)	%DBU	%HAMT	%LAMT	VTV-CNT	MXM	MNM	ACS	AUTOMIG	STATE
HBVTSS16	56,209	9	35	30	204	6	1	--		ONLINE-P
HBVTSS17	56,209	7	35	30	218	4	3	02		ONLINE-P
HBVTSS18	N/A	N/A	35	30	N/A	3	1	01		OFFLINE
HBVTSS19	93,184	5	35	30	110	3	1	01		ONLINE

**Figure 29. Example output from Display VTSS**

### **VTSSNAME**

the name of the VTSS.

### **CPCTY(MB)**

the total physical capacity in megabytes of the specified VTSS.

### **%DBU**

the percentage of disk buffer used of the total buffer capacity.

### **%HAMT**

the high AMT.

### **%LAMT**

the low AMT.

### **VTV-CNT**

the number of VTVs resident on the VTSS.

### **MXM**

the current MAXMIG value.

### **MNM**

the current MINMIG value.

### **ACS**

the default ACS.

### **AUTOMIG**

indicates which host is performing the auto migration and the threshold to which the VTSS is migrating.

### **STATE**

one of the following global VTSS states (described in Table 11 on page 147) for all hosts:

#### **QUIESCING**

Quiescing state.

#### **QUIESCED**

Quiesced state.



**OFFLINE**

Offline state.

**OFFLINE-P**

Offline pending state.

**ONLINE**

Online state.

**ONLINE-P**

Online pending state.

**STARTED**

The VTSS is initialized and in process of going to the requested state (online, offline, or quiesced).

Display VTSS DEtail  
Output

Figure 30 shows an example of the additional fields for Display VTSS DEtail output.

HOST	VTSSNAME	NOMIGRAT?	NORECLAM?	STATE
EC10	HBVTSS16	Y	Y	ONLINE
EC21	HBVTSS16	N	Y	ONLINE
EC21	HBVTSS17	N	Y	QUIESCED
EC10	HBVTSS17	Y	Y	OFFLINE

**Figure 30. Example additional output from Display VTSS DEtail**

- HOST**  
the hosts that have access to the VTSSs in the **VTSSNAME** field.
- VTSSNAME**  
the VTSSs that the hosts in the **HOST** field can access.
- NOMIGRAT**  
whether NOMIGRAT is set on for this host.
- NORECLAM**  
whether NORECLAM is set on for this host.
- STATE**  
one of the following VTSS states (described in Table 11 on page 147) for this host:
- QUIESCING**  
Quiescing state.
- QUIESCED**  
Quiesced state.
- OFFLINE**  
Offline state.
- OFFLINE-P**  
Offline pending state.
- ONLINE**  
Online state.
- ONLINE-P**  
Online pending state.
- STARTED**  
The VTSS is initialized and in process of going to the requested state (online, offline, or quiesced).

**Display VTD Output**

Figure 31 shows an example of Display VTD output.

DRIVE	LOCATION	VTV	STATUS
A800	HBVTSS16	X00778	MOUNTED
A801	HBVTSS16		AVAILABLE
A802	HBVTSS16		AVAILABLE
A803	HBVTSS16		AVAILABLE

**Figure 31. Example output from Display VTD**

**DRIVE**

the MVS device address of the VTD.

**LOCATION**

the VTSS that contains the VTD.

**VTV**

the VTV volser if **STATUS** is **Mounted**.

**STATUS**

one of the following VTD statuses:

**Mounted**

the VTV volser shown in the **VTV** column is mounted on the VTD.

**Available**

the VTD is available for work.

**Display RTD Output**

Figure 32 shows an example of Display RTD output.

RTD	STATUS	MVC
B200	ONLINE/FREE	-
B201	ONLINE/FREE	-
0B79	ONLINE/FREE	-
0B7A	ONLINE/FREE	-
1600	MVS1:MIGRATE	MVC100
1601	MVS1:MIGRATE	MVC087

**Figure 32. Example output from a VT Display RTD command**

**RTD**

the unit address of the RTD.

**Status**

One of the following RTD statuses:

**xxxx:Audit**

The RTD is in use by host *xxxx* for an audit.

**xxxx:Busy**

The RTD has been assigned to host *xxxx*.

**xxxx:Migrate**

The RTD is in use by host *xxxx* for a VTV migration.

**xxxx:Recall**

The RTD is in use by host *xxxx* for a VTV recall.

**xxxx:Recover**

Host *xxxx* is attempting to reset the RTD.

**xxxx:Unload**

Host *xxxx* is forcing an unload to move MVC to other RTD.

**xxxx:Xfer**

The RTD is in use by host *xxxx* for transfer of VTV between VTSSs.

**Idle**

An MVC is mounted on the RTD, but the RTD is idle for the time specified on the CONFIG VTSS RETAIN parameter as described in “RETAIN=nn” on page 19. For example, VTCS reports this status after a migration completes to this MVC.

**Initialise**

The host is verifying RTD status and availability.

**Maintenance**

The RTD has failed or it has been varied into maintenance mode.

**Offline**

The RTD is offline and unavailable to all hosts and VTSSs.

**Online/free**

The RTD is online and available.

**Recovery**

The RTD is being reset following an error or a vary online mode.

**Suspend**

The RTD operations are suspended. This occurs when two RTDs are connected to two separate ports on the same VSM4 ICE3 card CIP. When one RTD is active, the other is in Suspend mode.

**MVC**

the volser of the MVC either currently mounted or last mounted.

## Display Active and Display Queue Output

Figure 33 shows an example of Display Active output.

MIGRATES=3	RECALLS=2	RECLAIMS=0
------------	-----------	------------

**Figure 33. Example output from the VT Display command (no detail)**

Figure 34 shows example of Display Active DETail output.

FUNCTION	ID	VTV	MVC	RTD	VTSS
MIGRATE	00000001	VTV001	MVC100	A01	VTSS1
MIGRATE	00000002	VTV055	MVC087	A03	VTSS2
MIGRATE	00000003	VTV124	MVC025	A00	VTSS1
RECALL	00000004	VTV007	MVC011	A07	VTSS1
RECALL	00000005	VTV019	MVC005	A05	VTSS2

**Figure 34. Example output from a VT Display Active DETail command**



**Note:** \*ABORT appears in the display of reclaim requests if the request has cancelled or abended.

Figure 35 shows an example Display Queue DETail output.

FUNCTION	ID	VTV	MVC	VTSS	RTD	REASON
MIGRATE	00000001	VTV001	MVC100	VTSS1	A01	MVC
MIGRATE	00000002	VTV055	MVC087	VTSS2		RTD
MIGRATE	00000003	VTV124	MVC025	VTSS1	A00	MVC
RECALL	00000004	VTV007	MVC011	VTSS1	A07	MVC
RECALL	00000005	VTV019	MVC005	VTSS2		RTD

**Figure 35. Example output from a VT Display Queue DETail command**

### Function

One of the following processes:

#### Audit#

Audit utility request.

#### Cancel@

Cancel command.

#### CONSOLID

CONSoLid utility subtask.

#### CONSOLD#

CONSoLid utility task.

#### Dismount

VTV dismount.

**Display@**

Display command.

**Drain**

Drain VTVs from MVC.

**Drain@**

Drain command.

**Migrate**

A child of a **VTVMover** request, which is responsible for the migrate portion of the VTV movement.

**Migrate@**

Migrate command or utility.

**Mig\_set@**

Set migration threshold command.

**Mig\_thr@**

Migrate to threshold command.

**Mount**

VTV mount.

**MVC\_chek**

Display MVC.

**MVCDrain**

There is one **MVCDrain** request per MVC being drained. **MVCDrain**, which is a child request of a **Drain@** request, is responsible for managing the entire drain process for a single MVC.

**MVC\_inv**

Audit of an MVC.

**MVCReclm**

There is one **MVCReclm** request per MVC being reclaimed.

**MVCReclm**, which is a child request of a **Reclaim@** request, is responsible for managing the entire reclaim process for a single MVC.

**MVC\_upd**

Reset MVC status.

**QRY/SET@**

Display or set command.

**Recall**

A child of a **VTVMover** request, which is responsible for the recall portion of the VTV movement.

**Recall@**

Recall command or utility.

**Reclaim@**

Reclaim command or auto reclaim request.

**Scratch**

Scratch VTV.

**Sel\_scr**

PGMI select scratch.

**Transfer**

Transfer VTV between VTSSs.

**Unload**

Unload MVC from RTD.

**Unscratch**

Unscratch VTV.

**Vary@**

Vary RTD.

**VTV\_chek**

Display VTV.

**VTSS\_inv**

Audit of a VTSS.

**VTVMover**

There is one **VTVMover** request per MVC being drained or reclaimed.

This is a child request of either an **MVCDRain** or **MVCReclm** request. This request is responsible for the movement of VTVs from one MVC to another.

**VTV\_upd**

Resynchronize VTV status and CDS.

**ID**

The process ID, which is a unique number in the range 0 - 65536. When the process ID reaches 65536 it wraps back to zero.

**VTV**

the volser of the VTV used in the process.

**MVC**

the volser of the MVC used in the process. **-TERM-** can also appear in this field for reclaim requests. **-TERM-** indicates that the reclaim request is waiting to terminate because it has outstanding child requests, which are usually the outstanding migrate requests.

**VTSS**

the name of the VTSS that initiated the process.

**RTD**

the unit address of the RTD used in the process.



**Reason**

(queued processes only) the resource for which the process is waiting before it can continue:

**TSK**

Waiting for processing lock on other host.

**VTD**

Waiting for VTD.

**MVC**

Waiting for MVC lock.

**VTV**

Waiting for VTV lock.

**INV**

Waiting for an available audit (inventory) task.

**CMD**

Waiting for the command processor task.

**DSP**

Waiting for the main dispatcher task.

**SS**

Waiting for an available VTSS task.

**RTD**

Waiting for an available RTD task.

**DRV**

Waiting for a free RTD.

**SCR**

Waiting for scratch tapes.

**RCM**

Waiting for the space reclaim manager task.

**SUB**

Waiting for child request to complete (Active and Queue requests).

Display SCRATCH  
Output

Figure 36 shows an example of Display SCRATCH output.

SUBPOOL-NAME	SCRATCH-COUNT
VIR000	14,364
VIR0002	13,582
VIRTUAL	19,132
VIRTUAL1	9,905

*Figure 36. Example output from Display SCRATCH*

**SUBPOOL-NAME**

the name of the scratch subpool

**SCRATCH-COUNT**

the number of available scratch VTVs in the subpool.

Display MVCPool  
Output

Figure 37 shows an example of Display MVCPool NAME (P00L1) output.

MVCPool (P00L1) INFORMATION							
ACS	MEDIA	FREE-MVCS		RECLAIM-MVCS		USED-MVCS	
		VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB
00	ECART	120	96	2	0.5	90	45
00	STK1R	30	600	1	3.5	25	350
00	TOTAL	150	696	3	4.0	115	395

*Figure 37. Example output from Display MVCPool NAME (P00L1)*

Figure 38 shows an example of `Display MVCPool` output (no pool name specified).

MVCPool INFORMATION							
ACS	MEDIA	FREE-MVCS		RECLAIM-MVCS		USED-MVCS	
		VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB	VOLS	GB
00	ECART	310	248	4	1.2	100	65
00	ZCART	120	192	1	0.5	250	400
00	TOTAL	430	440	5	1.7	350	465
01	ECART	90	144	15	6.2	322	485
01	ZCART	35	700	3	11.3	43	675
01	TOTAL	125	844	18	17.5	365	1160
NON-LIB	STK2P	22	1100	0	0	12	1565
NON-LIB	TOTAL	22	1100	0	0	12	1565

**Figure 38. Example output from `Display MVCPool` (no pool name specified)**

#### ACS

the ACS containing the MVC pool. **NONLIB** counts are for initialized MVCs that are now outside the library.

#### MEDIA

the MVC media type.

#### FREE-MVCS

MVCs that have 100% usable space and do not contain any migrated VTVs. The storage shown is the total free space based on media type capacity.

#### RECLAIM-MVCS

MVCs eligible for space reclamation by this host. The storage shown is the total wasted space including those MVCs not yet eligible for space reclaim.

#### USED-MVCS

Initialized MVCs that are partially or completely full.

## Display VTV Output

Figure 39 shows an example of Display VTV output.

VOLSER:	X52638
VTSS:	HBVTSS17
MOUNTED:	8900
UNCOMPRESSED SIZE (MB)	15.30
COMPRESSED SIZE (MB)	3.90
CREATION DATE:	2002JUN18 10:44:08
LAST USED DATE:	2002JUL15 03:10:05
MVC(S):	EVS124 TIM744
BLOCK-ID(S):	2440112B 9F40543E
MANAGEMENT CLASS:	MIG22
STATUS:	INITIALIZED
	RESIDENT
	MIGRATED
	DUPLEXED

**Figure 39. Example output from Display VTV**

**VOLSER**

the volser of the VTV specified in the query.

**VTSS**

the VTSS where the VTV resides.

**MOUNTED**

if the VTV is mounted on a VTD, the VTD unit address is displayed.

**UNCOMPRESSED SIZE(MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB).

**COMPRESSED SIZE (MB)**

the compressed size of the VTV (MB).

**CREATION DATE**

the date when the VTV was created in the VTSS.

**LAST USED DATE**

the date when the VTV was last mounted in the VTSS.

**MANAGEMENT CLASS**

the VTV's Management Class.

**MVC(S)**

the MVC(s) where the VTV resides. This entry only appears when the VTV is migrated.

**BLOCK-ID**

the logical block ID of the beginning of the VTV on the MVC.

**STATUS**

one or more of the following statuses:

**CONSOLIDATED**

VSM has consolidated the VTV.

**DUPLEXED**

The DUPLEX attribute has been assigned to this VTV. When VSM migrates the VTV, a copy will be written to two MVCs.

**INITIALIZED**

VTCS has used the VTV at least once.

**MIGRATED**

VSM has migrated the VTV.

**RESIDENT**

The VTV is resident on the VTSS.

**SCRATCH**

The VTV is in scratch status.

**UNINITIALIZED**

The VTV has been defined via the CONFIG utility, but has not ever been used.

**REPLICATION REQUIRED**

This VTV should be replicated and is currently waiting for replication.

**REPLICATION STARTED**

Replication is active for this VTV but not yet complete.

**REPLICATION COMPLETE**

A fully replicated copy of this VTV is now resident in the Secondary VTSS.

Display MVC Output

Figure 40 shows an example of Display MVC output.

VOLSER:	9940245
VTV COUNT:	1
MEDIA:	STK2P
ACSID:	00
SIZE(MB):	10240
%USED:	0.01
%FRAGMENTED:	5.66
%AVAILAABLE	94.33
%USABLE	0.00
TIMES MOUNTED:	4
LAST MOUNTED	2002APR21 05:53:28
OWNER:	LOCAL
VTSS:	HBVTSS08
MVCPPOOL:	POOL1
SECURITY ACCESS:	UPDATE
STATUS:	INITIALIZED
	IN ERROR
	DATA CHECK

Figure 40. Example output from Display MVC

**VOLSER**

the volser of the MVC.

**VTV COUNT**

the number of VTVs on the MVC.

**MEDIA**

the volume media.

**ACSID**

the ACS that contains the MVC.

**SIZE(MB)**

the size of the MVC in megabytes

**%USED**

the percentage of the MVC used by valid VTVs.

**%FRAGMENTED**

the percentage of the MVC that has invalid VTV space that is not available for use until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained.

**%AVAILABLE**

the percentage of the MVC that is physically available for use.

**%USABLE**

the percentage of space on the MVC that can be used by VTCS. This may be zero even if there is still space physically available. For instance, if the VTV per MVC limit is reached then the %Usable will be reported as 0%. Similarly, if an error has been reported against an MVC then VTCS will not use this MVC for output and the %Usable will be reported as %0.

**TIMES MOUNTED**

the number of times the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory.

**LAST MOUNTED**

the date and time the MVC was last mounted.

**OWNER**

the Storage Class that owns the MVC.

**VTSS**

the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC. CONSOLIDATE appears in this field for consolidated VTVs.

**MVCPPOOL**

either an MVC Pool Name (including DEFAULTPOOL) or **NO** if the MVC is not defined on an MVCPool statement.

**SECURITY ACCESS**

VTCS permissions for the MVCs defined in an MVCP00L statement (**UPDATE**, **NO UPDATE**, or **NO PROFILE**).

**STATUS**

one of the following statuses:

**DATA CHECK**

A data check condition has been reported against this MVC. The MVC will not be used again for migration. To clear this condition, use MVCDRain on the MVC without the Eject option.

**DRAINING**

The MVC is either currently being drained or has been the subject of a failed MVCDRain.

**IN ERROR**

An error occurred while the MVC was mounted.

**INITIALIZED**

the MVC has been initialized.

**LOST - FAILED TO MOUNT**

The MVC was not mounted in response to the last mount request. The MVC can still be used for migration, but will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked “LOST”. After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred. This condition will clear itself the next time that the MVC is mounted.

**MARKED FULL**

The MVC is full and is not a candidate for future migrations.

**MOUNTED**

The MVC is mounted on an RTD.

**NOT-INITIALIZED**

The MVC has been defined via the CONFIG utility, but has not ever been used.

**READ ONLY**

The MVC has been marked read-only.

**BEING AUDITED**

The MVC is either currently being audited or has been the subject of a failed audit. If the audit failed, VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, rerun the AUDIT utility against this MVC.

**LOGICALLY EJECTED**

The MVC has either been the subject of an MVCDRain Eject or the MVC was ejected for update by a RACROUTE call. The MVC will not be used again for migration or recall. To clear this condition, use MVCDRain against the MVC without the Eject option.

**RETIRED**

The MVC is retired (depreferenced for migration).

**INVALID MIR**

The MVC has an invalid MIR.



## Display CONFIG Output

Figure 41 shows an example of Display CONFIG output.

MAXVTV	MVCFREE	VTVATTR	RECLAIM:	THRESHOLD	MAXMVC	START
4000	10	SCRATCH		30	10	10
VTSSNAME	AUTO MIGR THR		MIGR TASKS		DEFAULT	RETAIN
	LOW	HIGH	MIN	MAX	ACS	
HBVTSS16	60	80	1	1	FF	10
HBVTSS17	60	80	1	4	02	10
HBVTSS18	60	80	4	4	01	10
HBVTSS19	60	80	1	1	01	10
VTSSNAME	RTD NAME	RTD DEVNO	RTD TYPE	RTD-ACS	RTD-CHANIF	
HBVTSS16	SS162A00	2A00	9490	00	0A	
HBVTSS16	SS162A01	2A01	9490	00	0K	
HBVTSS16	SS162A02	2A02	9490	00	0I	
HBVTSS16	SS162A0C	2A0C	9840	02	1C	

**Figure 41. Example output from Display CONFIG**

### **MAXVTV**

the GLOBAL MAXVTV setting.

### **MVCFREE**

the GLOBAL MVCFREE setting.

### **VTVATTR**

the GLOBAL VTVattr setting (**SCRATCH** or **ALLmount**).

### **THRESHOLD**

the RECLAIM THRESHLD setting.

### **MAX MVC**

the RECLAIM MAXMVC setting.

### **START**

the RECLAIM START setting.

### **VTSSNAME**

the VTSS identifiers (VTSS NAME settings).

### **AUTO MIGR THR, LOW**

The low automatic migration threshold setting (LAMT) for the VTSS.

### **AUTO MIGR THR, HIGH**

The high automatic migration threshold setting (HAMT) for the VTSS.

**MIGR TASKS, MIN**

The minimum number of concurrent automatic migration tasks setting (MINMIG) for the VTSS.

**MIGR TASKS, MAX**

The maximum number of concurrent automatic migration tasks setting (MAXMIG) for the VTSS.

**DEFAULT ACS**

The default ACS setting (DEFLTACS) for the VTSS.

**RETAIN**

the VTSS RETAIN setting.

**RTD NAME**

the RTD names for the VTSS (RTD NAME settings).

**RTD DEVNO**

the RTD MVS device numbers for the VTSS (RTD DEVNO settings).

**RTD TYPE**

the RTD type.

**RTD-ACS**

the ACS that contains the RTD.

**RTD-CHANIF**

the RTD channel interface (RTD CHANIF settings).

## Display MIGrate Output

Figure 42 shows an example of Display MIGrate output.

```
VTSSNAME: HBVTSS16    ACTIVE MIGRATION TASKS: 4
IMMEDIATE MIGRATE: MAX WAIT: 5 MINUTES
AUTO MIGRATE: HOST: EC20MIGRATION TARGET: 70%
```

**Figure 42. Example output from Display MIGrate**

### ACTIVE MIGRATION TASKS

the total number of migration tasks (automatic, immediate, and migrate-to-threshold).

### IMMEDIATE MIGRATE

either **Not active** if there are no current or pending immediate migrations or the maximum time that any VTV has been waiting for immediate migration.



**Note:** This field only shows status for the LPAR on which the query was issued.

### AUTO MIGRATE

either **Not active** or the name of the host and migration target (LAMT or specified threshold for a migration-to-threshold) if auto migration is active on any host.

## Display MIGrate DEtail Output

Figure 43 shows an example of the additional fields from Display MIGrate DEtail output.

STORAGE	ACS	MAX	ONL RTD	ACTIVE	AUTO	IMMED	WEIGHT	TIMES
CLASS		TASKS	TASKS	TASKS	?	?	PERCENT	SKIPPED
HBVTSS16	00	4	4	2	Y	N	50	0
HBVTSS16	01	2	1	1	Y	N	25	0
STORCL100	00	5	4	1	Y	N	15	0
!ERROR	01	3	3	0	Y	N	10	1
** Error time: 2002Aug29 08:58:39 Reason: All RTDs offline								

**Figure 43. Example additional output from Display MIGrate DEtail**

### STORAGE CLASS

the Storage Class associated with the migration.



**Note:** If you do not explicitly assign a Storage Class, an MVC's default Storage Class is the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration and this class has the VTCS default media selections. To change these defaults, create a Storage Class with the VTSS name and specify the desired media selection order.

### ACS

the ACS defined for the Storage Class.

### MAX TASKS

the maximum number of RTD tasks based on the Storage Class and RTD configuration definitions.

### ONL RTD TASKS

the maximum number of tasks for those RTDs that are actually online (**MAX TASKS** minus the number of offline RTDS).

### ACTIVE TASKS

the number of migration tasks currently active for the Storage Class.

### AUTO ?

indicates whether the Storage Class contains automatic migration VTVs.

### IMMED ?

indicates whether the Storage Class contains immediate migration VTVs.

### WEIGHT PERCENT

the priority of the Storage Class compared to other Storage Classes for the VTSS. Storage Classes with higher priorities are assigned a greater proportion of migration tasks.

**TIMES SKIPPED**

the number of times the scheduling process skipped this Storage Class.



**Note:** Any Storage Classes in error (shown as !ERROR) also display an additional line indicating the last time the error was detected and the type of error (no RTDs available, all RTDs offline, no MVCs available).

Display TASKs Output

Figure 44 shows an example of Display TASKs output.

TASK	TASK	VTSS	RTD	CURRENT	WAITQ	PENDQ
NBR	TYPE			PROCESS	COUNT	COUNT
000	DSP			518		
001	SS	HBVTSS16	SS16B200			
002	RTD	HBVTSS16	SS16B201			
003	RTD	HBVTSS16	SS160B79			
004	RTD	HBVTSS16	SS160B7A		1	
005	RTD	HBVTSS16	SS160B7C			

*Figure 44. Example output from Display TASKs*

**TASK**

the task number for each task on the current host.

**TYPE**

the task type.

**VTSS**

the VTSS name.

**RTD**

the RTD name for RTD tasks.

**CURRENT PROCESS**

the current process ID.

**WAITQ COUNT**

the count of requests waiting for locks.

**PENDQ COUNT**

the count of pending requests.

Display LOCKs  
Output

Figure 45 shows an example of Display LOCKs output.

HOST	TASK	TYPE	VTD	MVC	VTV	WHOST	WTASK
EC21	006	RTD		EVS101		EC10	007
EC20	010	RTD		EVS145	X15328		
EC20	010		A91E		X153234		

**Figure 45. Example output from Display LOCKs**

**HOST**

the host that owns the lock.

**TASK**

the task number associated with the lock.

**TYPE**

the task type.

**VTD**

the associated VTD address on the issuing host.

**MVC**

the locked MVC.

**VTV**

the locked VTV.

**WHOST**

the host waiting for the lock or **ALL** if multiple hosts are waiting.

**WTASK**

the task waiting for the lock or **ALL** multiple tasks are waiting.

## Display CLINK Output

Figure 46 shows an example of Display CLINK output.

VTSS	CLINK	STATUS	USAGE	HOST
HBVTSS19	7	ONLINE	REPLICATING	EC21
	6	ONLINE	FREE	
	5	ONLINE	FREE	
	4	ONLINE	FREE	

**Figure 46. Example output from Display CLINK**

**VTSS**

the Primary VTSS name.

**CLINK**

the link ID.

**STATUS**

one of the following link statuses:

**ONLINE**

Available for replication.

**UNUSABLE**

Not available for replication due to hardware errors or assigned-elsewhere conditions.

**USAGE**

one of the following link usages:

**FREE**

Link is idle (not doing replications).

**REPLICATING**

Link is actively doing replications.

**ASSIGNED**

Link is assigned to the host in the **HOST** field but is not currently replicating. This usage occurs when VTCS is starting or terminating link use or is attempting error recovery on the link after a replication failure.

**HOST**

the hosts that have access to the VTSSs in the **VTSS** field.

Display CLUSTER  
Output

Figure 47 shows an example of Display CLUSTER output.

NAME	PRIMARY	STATE	SECONDARY	STATE	MODE
CLUSTER1	HBVTSS19	ONLINE	HBVTSS18	ONLINE	FULL-FUNCTION

**Figure 47. Example output from** Display CLUSTER

**NAME**

the Cluster name.

**PRIMARY**

the Primary VTSS name.

**SECONDARY**

the Secondary VTSS name.

**STATE**

one of the following VTSS states:

**QUIESCING**

Quiescing state.

**QUIESCED**

Quiesced state.

**OFFLINE**

Offline state.

**OFFLINE-P**

Offline pending state.

**ONLINE**

Online state.

**ONLINE-P**

Online pending state.

**STARTED**

The VTSS is initialized and in process of going to the requested state (online, offline, or quiesced).



**MODE**

one of the following Cluster operating modes:

**FULL-FUNCTION**

Both VTSSs are online to VTCS. Production workload goes to the Primary for VTV replication to the Secondary.

**DEGRADED SECONDARY**

The Primary is online to VTCS and the Secondary is either offline or quiesced. Workload can run on the Primary. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the Primary only if no other Full Function Clusters are available. In this case, Replicate VTVs are migrated immediately with keep and are queued for replication, which occurs when the Secondary comes online.

**DEGRADED PRIMARY**

The Secondary is online to VTCS and the Primary is either offline or quiesced. Workload can run on the Secondary. VTVs requiring replication, however, are allocated to the Secondary only if no other Full Function Clusters are available. When the Primary comes back ONLINE, VTCS reconciles the contents of the Primary and Secondary.

**NON-OPERATIONAL**

No workload is possible on this Cluster.

Display REPLICat  
Output

Figure 48 shows an example of Display REPLICat output.

VTSS	HOST	QDEPTH
HBVTSS19	EC10	0
	EC20	0
	EC21	1
	ECCL	0
	ECCY	1
	EC31	0

*Figure 48. Example output from* Display REPLICat

**VTSS**

the Primary VTSS name.

**HOST**

the hosts attached to the Primary VTSS.

**QDEPTH**

the number of VTVs waiting to be replicated.

# DECOM

DECOM lists the VSM configuration information in the HSC CDS.

## Syntax

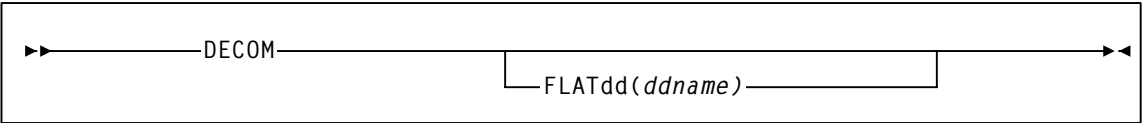


Figure 49. DECOM utility syntax

## Parameters

FLATdd  
specified the output destination ddname if a flat file is required.

ddname  
the ddname of the flat file included in the JCL.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.

## Usage

Use the DECOM utility to list the VSM configuration stored in the HSC CDS. If you need to rerun the CONFIG utility but no longer have the input file to CONFIG, run the DECOM utility with the FLATdd parameter. You can then edit the output file from DECOM and use it as input to the CONFIG utility.



**Hint:** The output file contains all statements (including CONFIG) from the original CONFIG input. Also note that the CONFIG utility allows you to respecify existing MVC and VTV ranges, which are also included in the DECOM output. For more information, see “VTVVOL Statement” on page 15 and “MVCVOL Statement” on page 16.

## JCL Requirements

STEPLIB  
specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT  
specifies the destination for the DECOM report.

SLSIN  
specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (DECOM utility name and parameters).

**JCL Example**

Figure 50 shows example JCL to run the DECOM utility with output to flat file CFG22202.

```
//DECOM      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN, PARM= 'MIXED'  
//STEPLIB    DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK, DISP=SHR  
//CFG22202   DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.CFG22202, DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN      DD *  
            DECOM FLATDD(CFG22202)
```

*Figure 50. Example JCL for the DECOM utility*

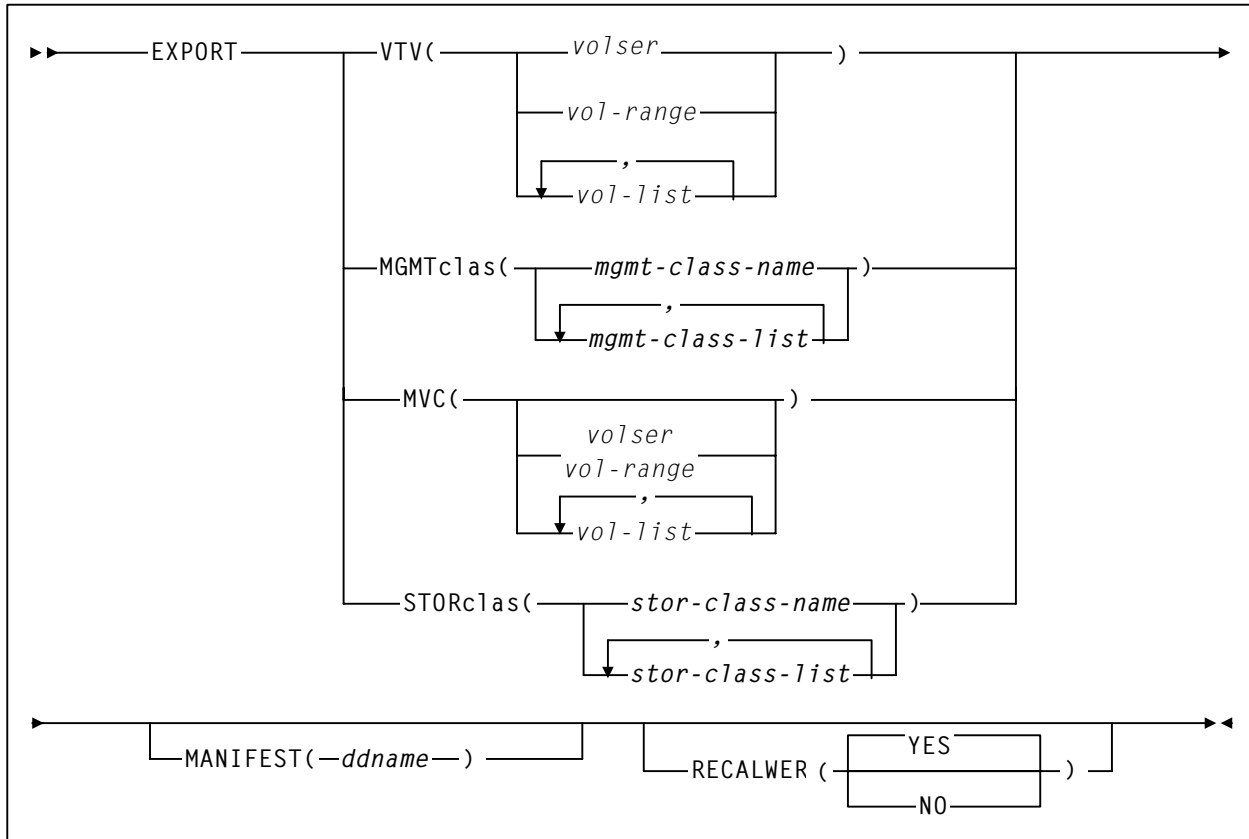
## EXPORT

EXPORT consolidates VTVs (if required) and creates a manifest file that lists the VTVs and MVCs available for export from a VSM system.



**Note:** EXPORT is valid only if FEATures VSM(ADVMMGMT) is specified; for more information, see “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168.

### Syntax



**Figure 51.** EXPORT *utility syntax*

## Parameters

### VTV

specifies one or more VTVs to consolidate for export.

*volser*, *vol-range* **or** *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs. You can specify an unlimited number of VTVs.

### MGMTclas

specifies one or more Management Classes that determine one or more VTVs to consolidate for export.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

### MVC

specifies one or more MVCs for export.

*volser*, *vol-range* **or** *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### STORclas

specifies one or more Storage Classes that determine one or more MVCs for export.

*stor-clas-name* | *stor-clas-list*

the names of one or more Storage Classes that you defined on the STORclas control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

### MANIFEST

specifies the output destination ddname of the manifest file.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. The default is MANIFEST.

### RECALWER

specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

YES

recall VTVs with read data checks (the default).

NO

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.

## Usage

Use the EXPORT utility to create a manifest file that lists the VTVs and MVCs (which are marked readonly) available for export from a VSM system. You can create this manifest file by specifying either:

- The VTV or MGMT parameters, which select the VTVs for export and consolidates the selected VTVs. These type of exports require that HSC is running and the CDS is active.
- The MVC or STOR parameters, which select the MVCs (and the VTVs they contain) for export. These type of exports can be run when HSC is down and the CDS is inactive. For example, if you lose all resources at the source VSM system except a copy of the CDS and MVCs containing all the source system's VTVs, you can run EXPORT against the CDS copy at the target VSM system to create a manifest file, then do an import to recreate the source system resources.



**Note:** The manifest file includes a checksum, which is written at the end of the file, and which covers the entire file. If a manifest file is changed, including writing to it with DISP=MOD, the checksum is invalid and the manifest file is unusable for import.



**Note:** An export also generates MVC summary and detail reports. For more information, see “MVC RPT” on page 106.

## Optional and Required JCL

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules (required).

manifest file DD

DD statement for the manifest file (optional).

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the EXPORT report (required).

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (EXPORT utility name and parameters) (required).

## JCL Examples

Figure 52 shows example JCL to run the EXPORT utility. In this example, the VTV parameter specifies consolidating VTV100 to VTV200 to MVCs for export. The output manifest file is REMOTE1.

```
//EXPORT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),RLSE),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=27920)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
EXPORT VTV (VTV100 - VTV200) MANIFEST(REMOTE1)
```

**Figure 52.** EXPORT utility example: specifying VTVs to consolidate for export

Figure 53 shows example JCL to run the EXPORT utility. In this example, the STOR parameter specifies making available for export the MVCs in Storage Class REMOTE. The output manifest file is REMOTE2.

```
//EXPORT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE2,ISP=(,CATLG,DELETE),
// UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),RLSE),
// DCB=(RECFM=FB,LRECL=80,BLKSIZE=27920)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
EXPORT STOR (REMOTE) MANIFEST(REMOTE2)
```

**Figure 53.** EXPORT utility example: specifying Storage Class to determine MVCs for export

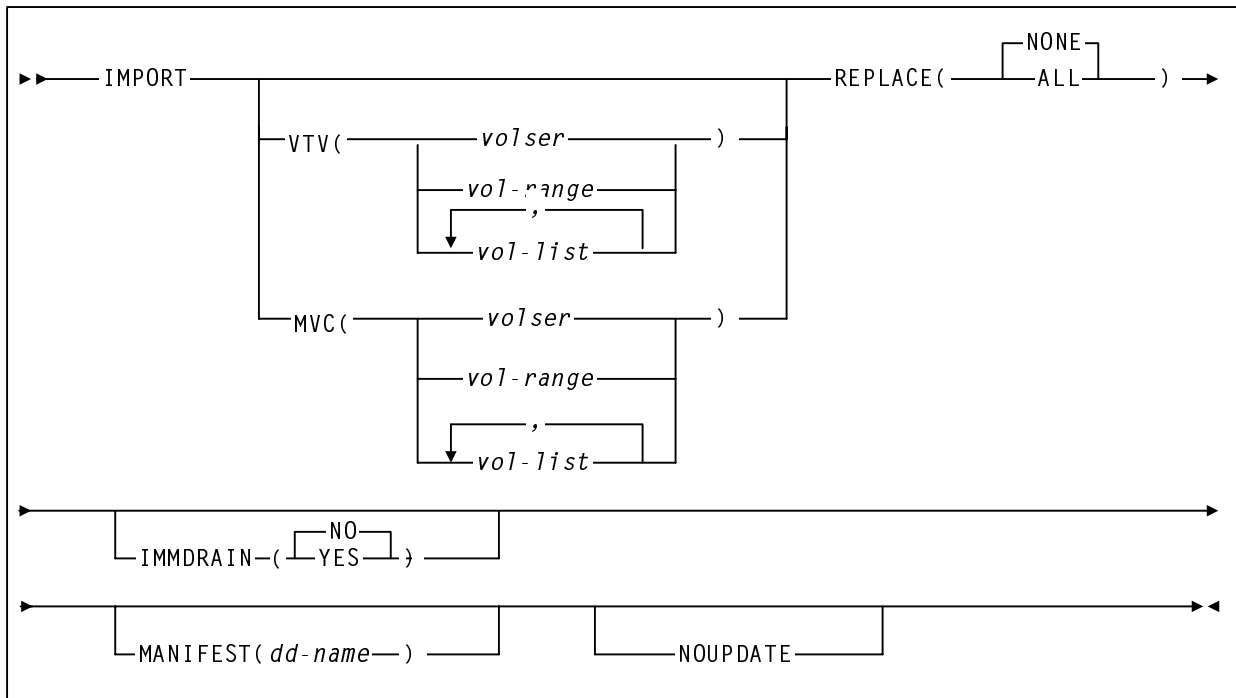
## IMPORT

IMPORT imports VTVs and MVCs listed on a manifest file into a VSM system.



**Note:** IMPORT is valid only if FEATures VSM(ADVMMGMT) is specified; for more information, see “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168.

### Syntax



**Figure 54.** IMPORT utility syntax



## Parameters

### VTV

specifies one or more VTVs to import.

*volser*, *vol-range* **or** *vol-list*  
the volsers of one or more VTVs.

### MVC

specifies one or more MVCs to import.

*volser*, *vol-range* **or** *vol-list*  
the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### REPLACE

specifies whether VSM replaces the VTV record in the target CDS.

#### NONE

Do not replace the VTV record (the default). VTCS only creates new records for VTVs that are not duplicates and replaces records for VTVs not initialized in the target CDS.

#### ALL

Replace any duplicate VTV records in the target CDS.



**Caution:** Ensure that you actually want to replace duplicate VTV records in the target CDS before you specify the ALL parameter! You may want to do a “validate” run with NOUPDATE to see which VTV records will be replaced.

**Also note that** if a VTV record is replaced, all existing VTSS and MVC copies of the VTV are invalidated.

**Finally**, you cannot import an MVC if the target CDS records show that the MVC contains VTVs, even if you specify REPLACE(ALL). In this situation, you must first drain (with eject) the MVC on the target system and eject it from the ACS. You can then import the MVC that you exported from the source system.

### IMMDRAIN

specifies whether VSM will immediately drain imported MVCs.

#### NO

Do not drain MVCs (the default).

#### YES

Drain MVCs.

### MANIFEST

specifies the input ddname of the manifest file.

#### *ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. The default is MANIFEST.

**NOUPDATE**

specifies that VSM does not update the CDS, validates the import operation, and writes information messages to the job log.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility only.

**Usage**

Use the IMPORT utility to import VTVs and MVCs listed on a manifest file into a VSM system. Typically, you do a “validation” import run, as shown in Figure 55 on page 79, followed by an actual import, as shown in Figure 56 on page 79. Imported MVCs are readonly; for information on making them writable, see “MVCMAINT” on page 93. Imports require that HSC is running and the CDS is active.

**Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files.



**Note:** For each VTV imported, the only MVC copies that will be created will be for MVCs that have been exported and imported via the same statements.

This has a particular significance when importing Duplexed VTVs. Such a VTV will only have copies on both MVCs after the import if both MVCs are present in the same Manifest file and imported as a result of the same IMPORT statement.



**Note:** An import also generates MVC summary and detail reports. For more information, see “MVCRPT” on page 106.

**JCL Requirements****STEPLIB**

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

**manifest file DD**

DD statement for the manifest file.

**SLSPRINT**

specifies the destination for the IMPORT report.

**SLSIN**

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (IMPORT utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples

Figure 55 shows example JCL to run the IMPORT utility. In this example, the MANIFEST parameter specifies importing all MVCs and VTVs listed on input manifest file REMOTE1. This example shows a “validation” run where:

- REPLACE(NONE) (the default) specifies that VTCS does not overwrite duplicate VTVs.
- IMMDRAIN(NO) (the default) specifies that VTCS does not drain all imported VTVs to VTSS space.
- NOUPDATE specifies that the CDS is not updated.

```
//IMPORT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
IMPORT MANIFEST(REMOTE1) NOUPDATE
```

**Figure 55. IMPORT utility example: validation import run**

Figure 56 shows example JCL to run the IMPORT utility. In this example, the MANIFEST parameter specifies importing all MVCs and VTVs listed on input manifest file REMOTE1. This example shows an actual import run where:

- REPLACE(ALL) specifies that VTCS overwrites all duplicate VTVs.
- IMMDRAIN(YES) specifies that VTCS drains all imported VTVs to VTSS space.
- The NOUPDATE parameter is not specified so that the CDS is updated.

```
//IMPORT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
IMPORT MANIFEST(REMOTE1) REPLACE(ALL) IMMDRAIN(YES)
```

**Figure 56. IMPORT utility example: actual import run**

Figure 57 shows example JCL to run the IMPORT utility. In this example, the MANIFEST parameter specifies importing multiple generations of a file.

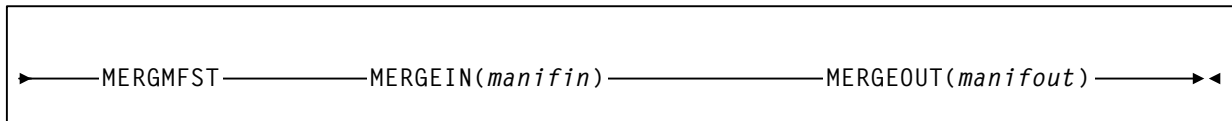
```
//IMPORT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN, PARM=' MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK, DISP=SHR
//ALLGEN DD DISP=SHR, DSN=EXPORT(0)
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=EXPORT(-1)
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=EXPORT(-2)
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=EXPORT(-3)
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=EXPORT(-4)
// DD DISP=SHR, DSN=EXPORT(-5)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
IMPORT MANIFEST(ALLGEN)
```

**Figure 57.** IMPORT utility example: import multiple file generations

## MERGMFST

MERGMFST merges multiple manifest files produced by EXPORT into a single file.

### Syntax



**Figure 58.** MERGMFST *utility syntax*

### Parameters

#### MERGEIN

specifies the DD statement for one or more input manifest files.

*manifin*

the DD name.

#### MERGEOUT

specifies the DD statement for the merged manifest file.

*manifout*

the DD name.

### Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.

### Usage

Use MERGMFST to merge multiple manifest files into a single file, which can be used as input to the following:

- IMPORT
- MVCMAINT
- MVCRPT
- VTVRPT



**Note:** For VTCS 5.0 and above, running MERGMFST produces an MVC Detail Report.

## JCL Requirements

### STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

### *manifin* DD

DD statement for the input manifest file(s).

### *manifout* DD

DD statement for the merged manifest file.

### SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the MERGMFST report.

### SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MERGMFST utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples

Figure 55 shows example JCL to run the MERGMFST utility to merge 5 manifest files.

**Note that** because each file is explicitly specified, they can be specified in any order.

```
//MERGMFST EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//manifin DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT1
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT2
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT3
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT4
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT5
//manifout DD DSN=mergefile,DISP=(,CATLG),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
DCB=(EXPORT5),SPACE=CYCL,(1,1)
//SLSIN DD *
MERGMFST MERGEIN(manifin) MERGEOUT(manifout)
```

**Figure 59.** MERGMFST utility example: merge 5 specified manifest files

Figure 60 shows example JCL to run the MERGMFST utility to merge 5 generations of manifest files.

```
//MERGMFST EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//manifin DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT(0)
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT(-1)
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT(-2)
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT(-3)
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT(-4)
//manifout DD DSN=MERGFIL.MANIFEST(+1)
//SLSIN DD *
MERGMFST MERGEIN(manifin) MERGEOUT(manifout)
```

**Figure 60.** MERGMFST utility example: merge 5 generations of manifest files

Figure 61 shows example JCL to run the MERGMFST utility to merge all generations of manifest files.

```
//MERGMFST EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//manifin DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT
//manifout DD DSN=mergefile,MANIFEST(+1)
//SLSIN DD *
MERGMFST MERGEIN(manifin) MERGEOUT(manifout)
```

**Figure 61. MERGMFST utility example: merge all generations of manifest files**

Figure 62 shows example JCL to run the MERGMFST utility to merge the current manifest file into a cumulative manifest file.

```
//MERGMFST EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//manifin DD DISP=SHR,DSN=EXPORT(0)
// DD DISP=SHR,DSN=MERGED.MANIFEST(0)
//manifout DD DSN=MERGED,MANIFEST(+1)
//SLSIN DD *
MERGMFST MERGEIN(manifin) MERGEOUT(manifout)
```

**Figure 62. MERGMFST utility example: merge the current manifest file into a cumulative manifest file**

# MIGRATE

MIGRATE migrates VTVs to MVCs.

## Syntax - Format 1

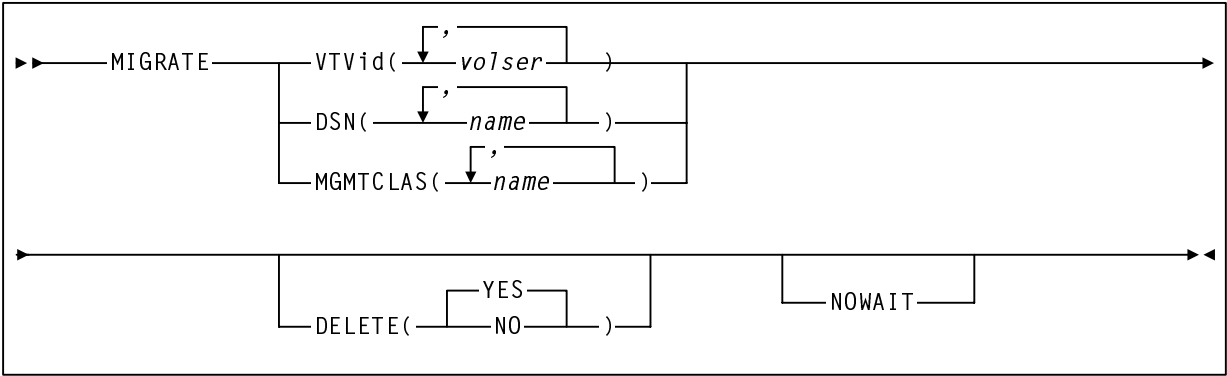


Figure 63. MIGRATE utility syntax - Format 1

### Parameters - Format 1

- VTVID**  
specifies the VTVs that VSM migrates.
- volser*  
the volsers of one or more VTVs. You can also specify one or more ranges.
- DSN**  
specifies data sets used to select VTVs to migrate.
- name*  
the data set name. Table 7 describes the valid wild cards for data set names. You cannot address a member of a GDG using a wildcard.



**Note:** Wildcard are only supported on MVS systems running DFSMS/MVS 1.4 or greater. At systems below this level the catalog search does not support wildcard.

Table 7. Data Set Name Wildcards

Wildcard	Stands for...
*	A qualifier or one or more characters within a qualifier. An asterisk can precede or follow a set of characters.
**	zero or more qualifiers. A double asterisk cannot precede or follow any characters; it must be preceded or followed by either a period or a blank.
% or ?	Exactly one alphanumeric or national character.
%% or ??	One to eight percent signs or question marks can be specified in each qualifier.



**MGMTCLAS**  
specifies one or more Management Classes that determine one or more VTVs to migrate.

*mgmt-class-name | mgmt-class-list*  
the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the `MGMTclas` control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.



**Note:** The `VTVid`, `DSN`, and `MGMTCLAS` parameters are mutually exclusive.

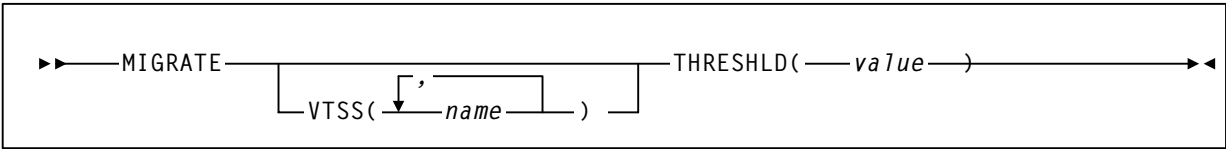
**DELETE**  
specifies whether VSM deletes VTVs from the VTSS after migrating the VTVs.

**NO**  
do not delete VTVs from the VTSS after migrating the VTVs.

**YES**  
delete VTVs from the VTSS after migrating the VTVs (the default).

**NOWAIT**  
specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

**Syntax - Format 2**



**Figure 64.** MIGRATE utility syntax - Format 2

**Parameters - Format 2**

**VTSS**  
specifies one or more VTSSs to migrate to the specified threshold.

*name*  
the names of one or more VTSSs.

**THRESHLD**  
specifies that VTCS runs the VTSS space management/VTV migration cycle until VTSS space reaches the specified threshold. Valid values are 0 to 95%.

*value*  
the threshold to migrate to (percent of VTSS space).

**Interfaces** SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

## Usage

Use the MIGRATE utility to do demand migrations of VTVs to MVCs.

You can do two types of demand migrations:

- Migrate specified VTVs by specifying the VTVid, DSN, or MGMTCLAS parameter (and, optionally, the DELETE (NO) parameter to prevent VSM from deleting the VTVs after migration).
- Use the THRESHLD parameter to force the VTSS space management/VTV migration cycle to run to a specified threshold for specified VTSSs.



**Note:** The SET HIGHthld and SET HIGHthld parameters are no longer supported on the MIGRATE command and utility. To change the low and high AMT, use the SET MIGOPT command and utility. For more information, see “SET MIGOPT” on page 137.

## Command Examples

To run MIGRATE to migrate VTVs determined by Management Class MCLAS1 and not delete them immediately from VTSS space., enter the following:

```
.VT MIGRATE MGMTCLAS(MCLAS1) DELETE(NO)
```

To run MIGRATE to migrate VTSS1 to a threshold of 10%, enter the following:

```
.VT MIGRATE VTSS(VTSS1) THRESHLD(10)
```

## JCL Requirements

The following are the required and optional statements for the MIGRATE JCL:

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the migrate report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MIGRATE utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples

Figure 65 shows example JCL to run MIGRATE to migrate VTVs determined by Management Class MCLAS1 and not delete them immediately from VTSS space.

```
//MIGRATE      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB      DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT      DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN         DD *  
               MIGRATE MGMTCLAS(MCLAS1) DELETE(NO)
```

**Figure 65. Example JCL for the MIGRATE utility (migrate by Management Class)**

Figure 66 shows example JCL to run MIGRATE to migrate VTSS1 to a threshold of 10%.

```
//MIGRATE      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB      DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT      DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN         DD *  
               MIGRATE VTSS(VTSS1) THRESHLD(10)
```

**Figure 66. Example JCL for the MIGRATE utility (migrate to threshold)**



## Usage

Use the VT MVCDEF command to load MVCPool statements in a specified definition data set; for more information, see “MVCPOOL Control Statement” on page 188. The VT MVCDEF command is valid for base and full service levels of HSC. For more information about using the VT MVCDEF command and the MVCPool statement.

You can enter the VT MVCDEF command as an operator command or specify the VT MVCDEF command as a statement in the HSC PARMLIB. If you specify a VT MVCDef statement in the PARMLIB, HSC startup loads the specified MVCPool statements. After HSC startup, you can enter the VT MVCDEF command as a command to dynamically reload another set of MVCPool statements from a different definition data set. If you restart HSC, it reloads the MVCPool statements specified by the VT MVCDEF command statement in the PARMLIB.

Note that if you dynamically reload another set of MVCPool statements, any MVCs that were in the previous MVC pool but are not in the current MVC pool definition are removed from the MVC pool unless the MVC contains valid VTVs. These MVCs are removed from the pool once those VTVs become invalid.

If the MVCPool definition data set contains errors when the VT MVCDEF command is entered, HSC issues message SLS5627I, which identifies the MVCPool parameter in error, describes the problem, and gives the line number where the error occurred. If an error occurs, VSM does not load the specified MVCPool statements. Correct the MVCPool statements problem and reissue the VT MVCDEF command.

## Example

To load the MVCPool statements in data set VSM.MVCP00L, enter:

```
.VT MVCDEF DSN(VSM.MVCP00L)
```

## MVCDRAIN

MVCDRAIN recalls all current and scratched VTVs from an MVC and, optionally, “virtually” ejects the MVC (makes it unavailable for VSM use without physically ejecting it from the library). You can use the MVCDRAIN to override the CONFIG RECLAIM CONMVC setting.

### Syntax

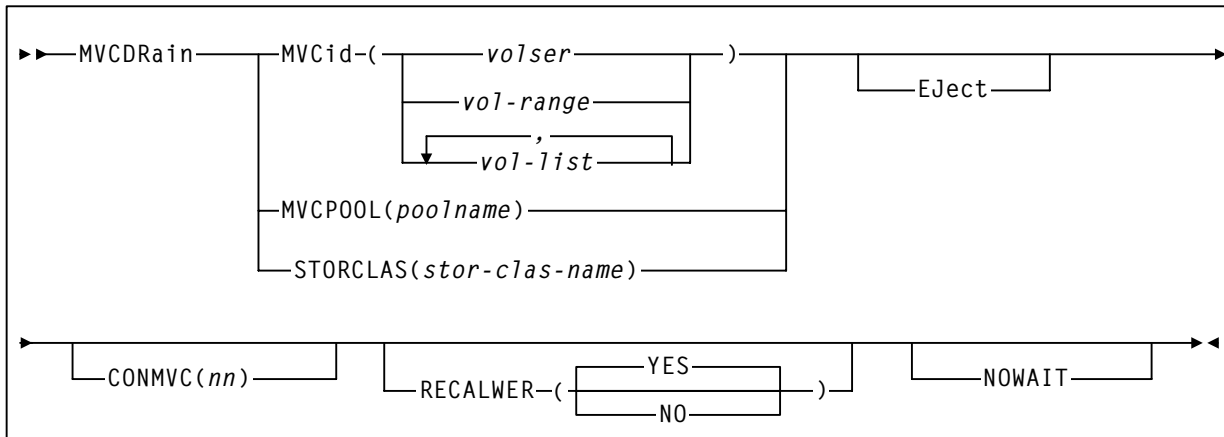


Figure 68. MVCDRAIN syntax

### Parameters

#### MVCid

drain one or more MVCs by volser.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs up to a maximum of 50.

#### MVCPOOL

drain the MVCs in the specified Named MVC Pool.

*poolname*

the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPOOL control statement; for more information, see “MVCPOOL Control Statement” on page 188.

#### STORCLAS

drain the MVCs in the specified Storage Class.

*stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORCLAS control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

#### Eject

specifies that VTCS “virtually” ejects the MVC (the MVC will not be used for output).

**CONMVC(*nn*)**

specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim.

Valid values are 1 to 99. If not specified, the default is the CONMVC value specified on the CONFIG RECLAIM statement.

**RECALWER**

specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

**YES**

recall VTVs with read data checks (the default).

**NO**

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks.

**NOWAIT**

specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

**Usage**

Use the MVCDRAIN to “drain” an MVC. The recall follows the same recall policy used for RECALL; for more information, see “RECALL” on page 118.

To select the MVCs to drain, you can specify one of the following parameters:

- MVCid to drain one or more MVCs by volser.
- MVCP00L to drain the MVCs in a Named MVC Pool. For more information on Named MVC Pools.
- STORCLAS to drain the MVCs in a Storage Class. For more information on Storage Classes.

You typically drain an MVC for the following reasons:

- An MVC report or Display shows data check errors for the MVC. VSM will not migrate to the MVC and you should remove it from the MVC pool.
- An MVC report or Display shows errors other than data check errors for the MVC.
- A Storage Class or Named MVC Pool is no longer in use and you want to remove or reuse the associated MVCs.

You can use the MVCDRAIN to override the CONFIG RECLAIM CONMVC setting. You can run the MVCDRAIN from each host, which starts drain tasks on that host equal to the CONMVC value. These drain tasks can run concurrently with drain tasks initiated by other hosts.



**Note:** VTCS and HSC must be active to process an MVCDRAIN request.

**Command Example**

To run the MVCDRAIN to drain the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1, virtually eject the MVCs, and return after the request is submitted, enter the following:

```
.VT MVCDRAIN STORCLAS(STORCL1) EJECT NOWAIT
```

**JCL Requirements**

- STEPLIB  
specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.
- SLSPRINT  
specifies the destination for the MVCDRAIN report.
- SLSIN  
specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MVCDRAIN utility name and parameters).

**JCL Example**

Figure 69 shows example JCL to run MVCDRAIN to drain the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1, virtually eject the MVCs, and return after the request is submitted.

```
//MVCDRAIN EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
MVCDRAIN STORCLAS(STORCL1) EJECT NOWAIT
```

*Figure 69. MVCDRAIN utility example: draining MVCs by Storage Class*



# MVCMaint

MVCMaint sets MVC attributes.

## Syntax

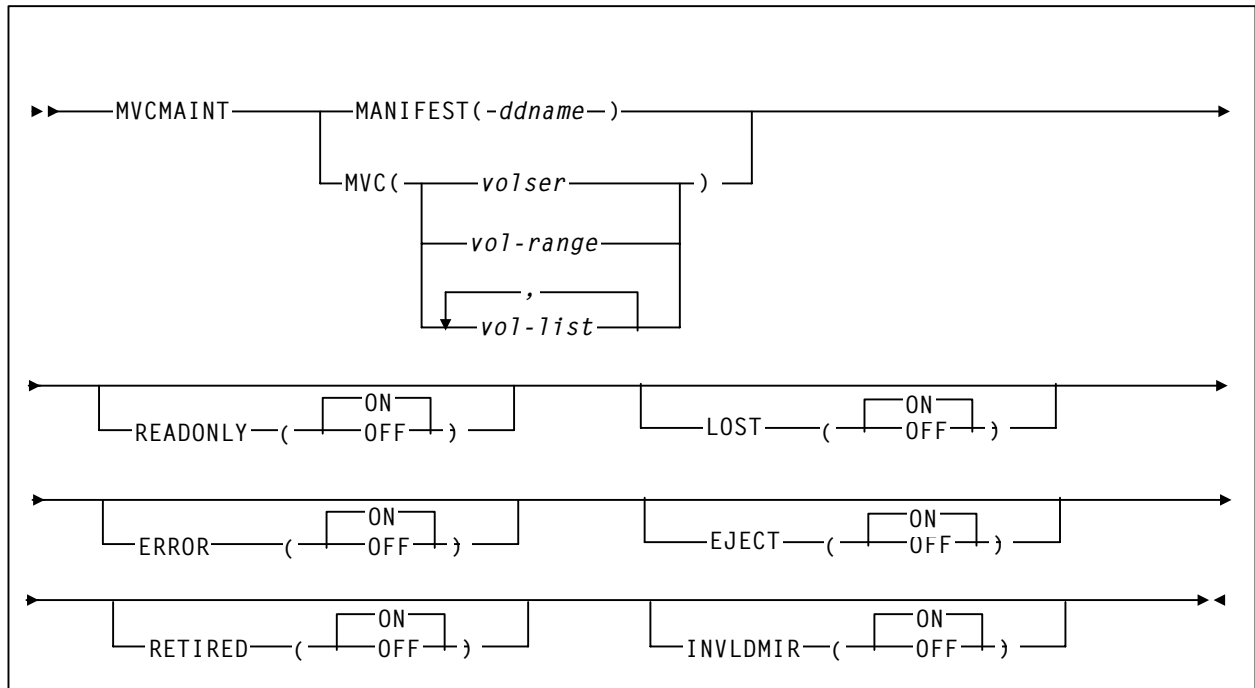


Figure 70. MVCMaint syntax

## Parameters

### MANIFEST

specifies the input ddname of the manifest file. **Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files. Figure 57 on page 80 shows example JCL to run the MVCMaint utility where the MANIFEST parameter specifies importing multiple generations of a file.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. The default is MANIFEST.

### MVC

specifies the MVCs whose read/write attribute is changed.

*volser, vol-range or vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

### READONLY

sets the read/write status of the MVC.

ON

MVC is readonly (the default).

OFF

MVCs is writable.

**LOST**

sets the “lost” status of the MVC.

ON

MVC is lost (the default).

OFF

MVC is not lost.

**RETIRED**

sets the “retired” status of the MVC.

ON

MVC is retired (the default).

OFF

MVC is not retired.

**INVLMIR**

sets the invalid MIR status of the MVC.

ON

MIR is invalid (the default).

OFF

MIR is not invalid.

**ERROR**

sets the error status of the MVC.

ON

MVC is in error (the default).

OFF

MVC is not in error.

**EJECT**

sets the “logical eject” status of the MVC.

ON

MVC is “logically ejected” (the default).

OFF

MVC is not “logically ejected”.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility only.

## Usage

Use the MVCMAINT to set the following MVC attributes:

- Read/write status (including exported and imported MVC)s.
- “Lost” status. If a VTCS initiated mount of an MVC on an RTD fails to complete (as opposed to completes with an error), VTCS updates the MVC record in the CDS to indicate that the MVC is “lost”. An MVC in “lost” status is depreference where ever possible. Duplexed VTVs that reside on this MVC are recalled from their alternate MVC. VTCS does not attempt to use “lost” MVCs for migration unless there are no other valid MVCs. When an MVC in “lost” status is successfully mounted, the “lost” status is removed from the MVC record.

You can use the LOST parameter to explicitly set the “lost” status of an MVC in to recover from known conditions. For example, if an ACS is in manual mode, you can set LOST (ON) for the MVCs in that ACS to depreference their use.

- Error status. The following are typical error conditions and corrective actions. After correcting the error, you can use MVCMAINT to set ERROR OFF for the MVC.
  - VTCS does not recognize the volume mounted on the RTD as an MVC. This can be caused by some MVS job overwriting the MVC. Determine what happened to the MVC. If it no longer contains valid VTV data, reinitialize the volume and return it to the MVC pool.
  - The MVC is not writeable, which can be caused by the thumbwheel being set to readonly, or by the security package not allowing VTCS to write to the volume. Reset the thumbwheel, or change the rules in the security package to allow the MVC to be written to.
  - A bad block ID has been detected. Audit the MVC to try to correct the condition. For more information, see “AUDIT” on page 4.
- “Logical eject” status.
- For 9840/T9940 media:
  - VTCS automatically detects media end-of-life and sets the RETIRED status to ON. Alternatively, you can use SMF or LOGREG data to detect MVCs approaching end-of-life and use the MVCMAINT to manually set RETIRED ON.
  - You can also use the MVCMAINT to set RETIRED OFF for MVCs erroneously marked as retired.

- VTCS automatically detects an invalid Media Information Region (MIR) and sets the INVLDMIR status to 0N. You can recover the MIR by using either the utility available through the operator panel for the transport or by using the utility available through MPST. After you recreate the MIR, you can use the MVCMAINT to set INVLDMIR OFF for the MVC.
- The MVC report, MVC Pool Report, and Display MVC command report “retired” and invalid MIR status; for more information, see:
  - “MVC Reports” on page 110
  - “Named MVC Pool Report” on page 101
  - “Display MVC Output” on page 58



**Note:** Running MVCMAINT also produces an MVC report of the volumes affected by the MVCMAINT job.

**JCL Requirements**

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

manifest file DD

DD statement for the manifest file.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the MVCMAINT report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MVCMAINT utility name and parameters).

**JCL Examples**

Figure 71 shows example JCL to run MVCMAINT to make writable all MVCs listed on input manifest file REMOTE1.

```
//MVCMAINT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
MVCMAINT MANIFEST(REMOTE1) READONLY(OFF)
```

**Figure 71. MVCMAINT utility example: making MVCs writable**

Figure 72 shows example JCL to run MVCMAINT to set on the “lost” status on for MVCs MVC001-MVC100.

```
//MVCMAINT EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
MVCMAINT MVC(MVC001-MVC100) LOST(ON)
```

**Figure 72. MVCMAINT utility example: setting MVCs “lost” status on**

**MVCMaint Reports**      Figure 73 shows an example of an MVCMaint report for the following command:  
**MVCMaint MVC(022577-022579) READONLY=OFF**

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)	STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY	PAGE 0002
TIME 09:26:54	MVC MAINTENANCE	DATE 2002-05-14
MVCMaint SUMMARY REPORT		
MVC	RC	
022577	00	
022578	08	
022578	08	
MVCMaint EXCEPTION REPORT		
*SLS6737I MVC 022578 ALREADY HAS READONLY(OFF); REQUEST IGNORED		
*SLS6737I MVC 022579 ALREADY HAS READONLY(OFF); REQUEST IGNORED		
SLS1315I SWS500.V5.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET		
SWSADMIN (5.1.0)	STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY	PAGE 0002
TIME 09:26:54	VTCS MVC SUMMARY REPORT	DATE 2002-05-14
MVC	NUMBER %USED %AVAIL %FRAG MEDIA TIMES STATUS	<-----LAST MOUNTED-----> ACS OWNER/
VOLSER	OF VTVS SIZE (MB) MOUNTED I B L D R U T M	DATE TIME VTSS ID CONSOLIDATE TIME
022577	0 0.00 99.96 0.04 400 142 I - - - - C - -	2002MAY14 06:23:23 00 2002MAY14 06:09:23
022578	0 0.00 99.96 0.04 400 197 I - - - - U - -	2002MAY14 06:23:23 VTSS16 00 VTSS16
022579	0 0.00 99.96 0.04 400 142 I - - - - C - -	2002MAY14 16:23:23 00 2002MAY14 16:09:23
3 INITIALIZED MVCS PROCESSED		
0 NON-INITIALIZED MVCS PROCESSED		
0 NON-LIBRARY MVCS PROCESSED		

Figure 73. Example MVCMaint report

As shown in Figure 73, the MVCMaint report shows:

- Status of MVCs processed - volser and return code (0 - all updates completed, 4 - some updates completed, 8 - no updates completed).
- An exception report of the reason for all uncompleted updates.
- An MVC summary report; for more information, see “MVC Summary Report” on page 110.

# MVCPLRPT

The MVCPLRPT reports the status of a Named MVC Pool or MVC Storage Class.

## Syntax

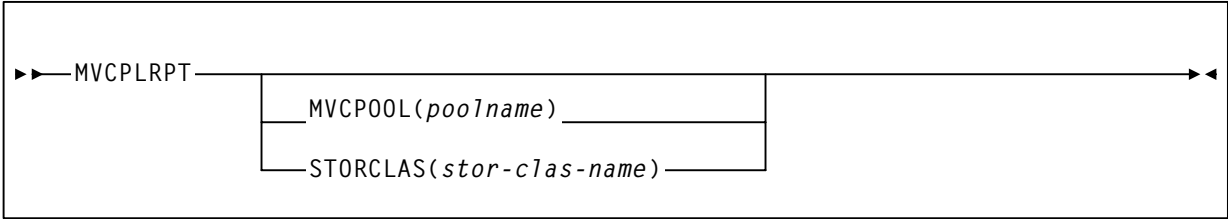


Figure 74. MVCPLRPT syntax

## Parameters

- MVCPOOL**  
report on the MVCs in the specified Named MVC Pool.
- poolname*  
the name of an Named MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPool control statement; for more information, see “MVCPOOL Control Statement” on page 188.
- To report on all Named MVC Pools (including DEFAULTPOOL), specify ALL or omit the MVCPOOL parameter.
- STORCLAS**  
report on the MVCs in the specified Storage Class. The report is produced as if the associated MVC pool name had been specified.
- stor-class-name*  
the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORclas control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.

## Usage

Use the MVCPLRPT to report the status of a Named MVC Pool or MVC Storage Class. Figure 75 on page 100 shows example JCL to run MVCPLRPT to produce a report by Named MVC Pool and Figure 76 on page 101 shows the report format.

**JCL Requirements**

The following are the required and optional statements for the MVCPLRPT JCL:

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the MVC report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MVCPLRPT utility name and parameters).

**JCL Example**

Figure 75 shows example JCL to run MVCPLRPT to produce a report for Named MVC Pool CUST1P00L.

```
//MVCPLR    EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN, PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB   DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK, DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT    DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN     DD *
            MVCPLRPT MVCPOOL(CUST1P00L)
```

*Figure 75. Example JCL for the MVCPLRPT utility (report by Named MVC Pool)*



Named MVC Pool  
Report

Figure 76 and Figure 77 on page 102 show an example of a report for Named MVC Pool CUST1P00L.

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)					STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY								PAGE 0002	
TIME 09:26:54					VTCS MVC SUMMARY REPORT - MVCPOOL=CUST1P00L								DATE 2002-04-13	
MVC	NUMBER	%USED	%AVAIL	%FRAG	MEDIA	TIMES	STATUS	<-----LAST MOUNTED----->			ACS	OWNER/		
VOLSER	OF VTVS				SIZE (MB)	MOUNTED	I B L D R U T M	DATE	TIME	VTSS	ID	CONSOLIDATE TIME		
EVS99	200	10.80	84.57	4.63	2000	310	I - - - - U - M	2002MAR15	03:20:23	VTSS8	00	S1		
EVS100	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	UNKNOWN	206	- - L - - U - -	2002MAR10	05:24:04	VTSS8	--			
EVS101	1009	99.00	0.00	1.00	400	306	I - - - - U - -	2002MAR15	03:20:23	VTSS8	00	S1		
EVS102	5	8.25	91.75	0.00	400	6	I - - - - U - -	2002MAR15	04:23:04	VTSS8	00	S3		
EVS103	EXPVTV	0.12	99.88	0.00	400	194	I - - - - J - -	2002MAR15	03:20:28	VTSS10	00	VTSS10		
EVS104	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	5	I - - - - R C - -	2002MAR18	03:49:14	VTSS8	00	2002APR12		
												03:49:14		
EVS105	200	10.80	84.57	4.63	102040	254	I - - - - R U T -	2002MAR18	04110:09	VTSS8	00			
EVS106	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	202	I - - - - C - -	2002MAR18	03:49:20	VTSS8	00			
EVS107	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	171	I - - - - R E - -	2002MAR18	04:13:00	VTSS8	00			
SUMMARY FOR MVCPOOL=CUST1P00L														
	ACS	MEDIA		FREE-MVCS		RECLAIM-MVCS		USED-MVCS						
				VOLS	GB		VOLS	GB		VOLS	GB			
	00	ECART		120	96		2	0.5		90	45			
	00	STK1R		30	600		1	3.5		25	350			
	00	TOTAL		150	696		3	4.0		115	395			

Figure 76. Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 1)

```

SUMMARY OF MVCS BY USAGE:

137 TOTAL MVCS PROCESSED
135 INITIALIZED MVCS PROCESSED
  2 UN-INITIALIZED MVCS PROCESSE
41 FREE MVCS AVAILABLE
  0 MVCS WITH STATUS AUDIT
  6 MVCS WITH STATUS DRAIN
  4 MVCS WITH STATUS EXPORT
  0 MVCS MARKED EJECTED
60 MVCS MARKED FULL
  0 MVCS WITH MAXIMUM VTVS
82 MVCS MARKED READ-ONLY
  3 MVCS WITH STATUS BROKEN
  7 MVCS WITH STATUS LOST
  0 MVCS MARKED RETIRED
  0 MVCS HAVE INVALID MIRS
  1 MVCS HAVE DATACHECKS
  5 MVCS WITH STATUS CONSOLIDATE

```

**Figure 77. Example MVCPLRPT report (Part 2)**

## MVCPLRPT Fields

The following list describes the Named MVC Pool report fields. The Summary fields are either for a Storage Class or a Named MVC Pool, depending on which was specified on the report JCL. If a Storage Class specifies a Named MVC Pool, the report gives information for that subpool.

### **MVC Volser**

the MVC volser.

### **Number of VTVS**

the number of current VTVs on the MVC. If the MVC has been used for VTV export, this field reports **EXPVTV**.

### **%Used**

the percentage of the MVC used by current VTVs.

### **%Avail**

the percentage of the MVC that is physically available for use.

### **%Frag**

the percentage of the MVC that contains non-current VTVs. This space is not usable until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained.

**Media Size (MB)**

the size of the MVC (MB). This will only be determined after VTCS has used an MVC. “UNKNOWN” appears in this field until VTCS migrates a VTV to the MVC.

**Times Mounted**

the number of times that the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory.

**STATUS**

one or more of the following statuses:

**I**

The MVC has been initialized.

**B**

The MVC has an error that should be investigated. The error may not make the MVC unusable, but VTCS will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked “B”. After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred for subsequent migrations, and recalls from the MVC may cause VTCS to drain it. This error condition may be accompanied by messages SLS6686, SLS6687, SLS6688, SLS6690, and/or SLS6693.

Any of the following conditions can cause this MVC error:

- MVC corrupted by another job (other than VTCS/VTSS).
- Attempt to use a read-only MVC for migration.
- A DDR swap failure.
- An RTD failure.

**L**

The MVC was not mounted in response to the last mount request. The MVC can still be used for migration, but will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked “L”. After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred. This condition will clear itself the next time that the MVC is mounted.

**D**

A data check was reported for this MVC. VSM will not use this MVC again for migration.

**R**

the MVC has been marked read-only.

**U**

one of the following usage statuses:

**U**

the MVC is available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

-

the MVC is not available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

**A**

The MVC is either being audited or the audit failed. If the audit failed, VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, rerun the `AUDIT` against this MVC.

**C**

The MVC is a consolidation MVC.

**E**

The MVC is an export MVC.

**F**

There is no space available on the MVC.

**J**

Either you issued a `MVCDRain EJect` for the MVC or the MVC was ejected for update by a `RACROUTE` call. The MVC will not be used again for migration or recall. To clear this condition, use `MVCDRain` against MVC without the `EJect` option.

**N**

Either:

- The MVC is being drained because of:
  - An automatic drain or demand reclaim.
  - An explicit `MVCDRain` command.

**OR**

- The previous `DRAIN` request failed, in which case VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, enter `MVCDRain` against MVC without the `EJect` option.

**X**

The MVC has reached the maximum VTVs per MVC.

**T**

The MVC is retired.

**M**

The MVC has an invalid `MIR`.

**Last Mounted**

the date and time that the MVC was last mounted and the VTSS where the MVC was last used.

**ACS ID**

the ACS where the MVC resides.

**Owner/Consolidate Time**

If the MVC is empty, this field is null. If the MVC is a consolidation MVC, this field displays the time of the consolidation. If the MVC is a migration MVC and contains current VTVs, this field displays the MVC's Storage Class. If no Storage Class was explicitly assigned via the `MGMTclas` statement, the default Storage Class is the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration.

If VTCS receives a request to migrate a VTV that is assigned to an invalid Management Class, VTCS will dynamically create the `!ERROR` Storage Class and migrate the VTVs defined by the invalid Management Class to the `!ERROR` Storage Class. Use this Storage Class to identify and correct invalid Management Classes, drain the affected MVCs, and resubmit the request.

**Summary for Storage Class or Named MVC Pool**

This section shows number of MVCs (**Vols**) and total storage (**Gb**) by ACS and media type for the following categories:

**Free-MVCs**

MVCs that have 100% usable space and do not contain any migrated VTVs. The storage shown is the total free space based on media type capacity.

**Reclaim-MVCs**

MVCs eligible for space reclamation. The storage shown is the total wasted space including those MVCs not yet eligible for space reclaim.

**Used-MVCs**

Initialized MVCs that are partially or completely full.

**Total MVCs**

Total MVCs for the Storage Class or Named MVC Pool with subtotals for initialized, uninitialized, and free MVCs.

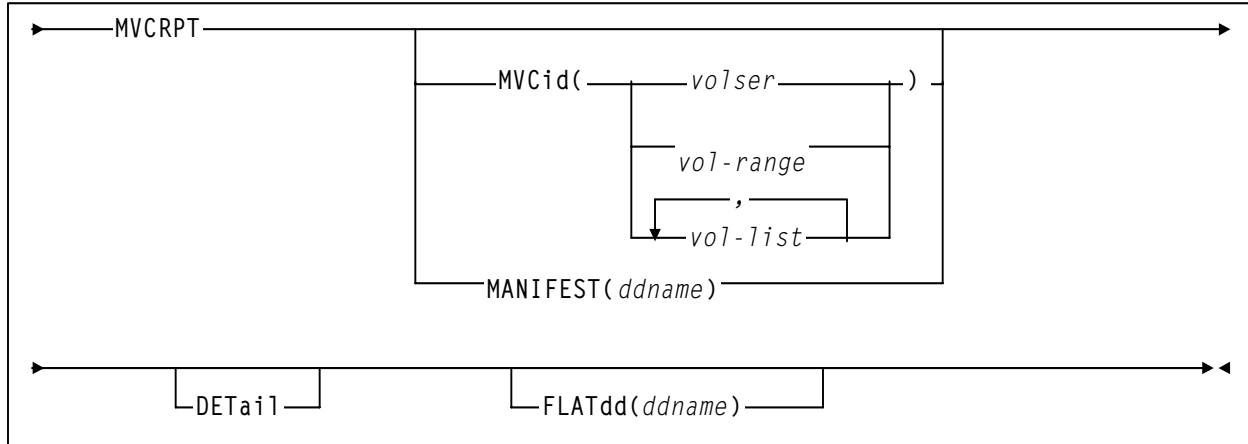
**Summary of MVCs by Usage**

This section shows number of MVCs by the task that last used the MVC.

## MVCRPT

The MVCRPT reports the status of your VSM system's MVCs.

### Syntax



**Figure 78.** MVCRPT *syntax*

### Parameters

#### MVCid

specifies the MVCs for the report. If you do not specify the MVCs, the report includes all MVCs in your VSM system.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs.

#### MANIFEST

specifies the input ddname of the manifest file used to generate the report.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file. **Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files. Figure 57 on page 80 shows example JCL to run the IMPORT utility where the MANIFEST parameter specifies importing multiple generations of a file.

#### DETai1

produce a detailed MVC report; see Figure 84 on page 114 for an example. If you do not specify this option, the default is to produce a summary MVC report; see Figure 83 on page 110 for an example.

#### FLATdd

specifies the destination of the optional flat file output.

*ddname*

name of the DD in the JCL that describes the output data set if a flat file is required.

### Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.

## Usage

Use the MVCRPT to report the status of your VSM system's MVCs. For more information, see "MVC Reports" on page 110. Figure 79 shows example JCL to run MVCRPT to produce a report and Figure 83 on page 110 and Figure 84 on page 114 show the report formats. MVC reports only list MVCs that have been used, not MVCs that are defined but have not been used, but non-initialized MVCs will be included in the report totals. As shown in Figure 80 on page 108, you can specify the MANIFEST parameter to generate a report from an export manifest file instead of from the HSC CDS.

To produce reports for VSM, ExPR requires a flat file format of the MVC report as input. Figure 81 on page 108 shows example JCL to produce flat file format of the report for ExPR. Table 8 on page 115 shows the flat file record format.

Also note that you can produce MVC reports in structured XML format. You can then process the XML output in a programming language of your choice (the World Wide Web has samples of C code that parse XML).

## JCL Requirements

The following are the required and optional statements for the MVCRPT JCL:

### STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

### SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the MVC report.

### SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (MVC RPT utility name and parameters).

### SYSOUT

specifies the output destination for SORT messages. This is only required for DETAIL MVC reports.

### SLSXML

specifies the output destination for XML output. Allocate this file as RECFM=VB, LRECL=255.

## JCL Examples

Figure 79 shows example JCL to run MVC RPT to produce a detailed report of all MVCs in your VSM system.

```
//MVCR      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB   DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//MVCOUT    DD DSN=FEDB.FLAT,UNIT=SYSALLDA,DISP=OLD
//SLSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT    DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN     DD *
           MVC RPT DET
```

**Figure 79. Example JCL for the MVC RPT utility (detailed report)**

Figure 80 shows example JCL to run MVC RPT to produce a detailed report using manifest file REMOTE1 as input.

```
//MVCR      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB   DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1   DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT    DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN     DD *
           MVC RPT MANIFEST(REMOTE1) DET
```

**Figure 80. Example JCL for the MVC RPT utility (detailed report, manifest file input)**

Figure 81 shows example JCL to run MVC RPT to produce a detailed report of all MVCs in flat file format for input to ExPR.

```
//MVCR      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB   DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//MVCOUT    DD DSN=FEDB.FLAT,UNIT=SYSALLDA,DISP=OLD
//SLSPRINT  DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT    DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN     DD *
           MVC RPT DET FLATDD(MVCOUT)
```

**Figure 81. Example JCL for the MVC RPT utility (detailed report, flat file output for ExPR)**



Figure 82 shows example JCL to run MVC RPT to produce a detailed report of all MVCs in structured XML format.

```
//MVCR      EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB   DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSXML     DD DISP=NEW,DSN=SYS2.MVCRPT.XML,
              UNIT=SYSDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),
              DCB=(RECFM=VB,LRECL=255,BLKSIZE=31030)
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSOUT     DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN      DD *
              MVC RPT DET
//REXX       EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01,DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSPROC    DD DSN=SYS2.CLIST,DISP=SHR
//SYSTSPRT   DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*
//I          DD DSN=SYS2.MVCRPT.XML,DISP=OLD
//SYSTSIN    DD *
PROFILE MSGID
%XMLREXX
```

*Figure 82. Example JCL for the MVC RPT utility (structured XML format)*



**Note:** XML output can consume **considerable** space. You may want to consider routing your XML output to a VTV so that the output is compressed.

## MVC Reports

The following sections describe the MVC summary and detailed reports that the MVC RPT produces.

### MVC Summary Report

Figure 83 shows an example of an MVC summary report.

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)					STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY					PAGE 0002				
TIME 09:26:54					VTCS MVC SUMMARY REPORT					DATE 2002-04-13				
MVC	NUMBER	%USED	%AVAIL	%FRAG	MEDIA	TIMES	STATUS	<-----LAST MOUNTED----->			ACS	OWNER/		
VOLSER	OF VTVS				SIZE (MB)	MOUNTED	I B L D R U T M	DATE	TIME	VTSS	ID	CONSOLIDATE	TIME	
EVS99	200	10.80	84.57	4.63	2000	310	I - - - - U - M	2002MAR15	03:20:23	VTSS8	00	S1		
EVS100	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	UNKNOWN	206	- - L - - U - -	2002MAR10	05:24:04	VTSS8	--			
EVS101	1009	99.00	0.00	1.00	400	306	I - - - - U - -	2002MAR15	03:20:23	VTSS8	00	S1		
EVS102	5	8.25	91.75	0.00	400	6	I - - - - U - -	2002MAR15	04:23:04	VTSS8	00	S3		
EVS103	EXPVTV	0.12	99.88	0.00	400	194	I - - - - J - -	2002MAR15	03:20:28	VTSS10	00	VTSS10		
EVS104	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	5	I - - - - R C - -	2002MAR18	03:49:14	VTSS8	00	2002APR12		
													03:49:14	
EVS105	200	10.80	84.57	4.63	102040	254	I - - - - R U T -	2002MAR18	04110:09	VTSS8	00			
EVS106	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	202	I - - - - C - -	2002MAR18	03:49:20	VTSS8	00			
EVS107	0	0.00	100.00	0.00	400	171	I - - - - R E - -	2002MAR18	04:13:00	VTSS8	00			
		137	Initialized MVCs processed											
		8	Non-Initialized MVCs processed											

**Figure 83. Example MVC summary report**

The following list describes the MVC summary report fields.

#### MVC Volser

the MVC volser.

#### Number of VTVS

the number of current VTVs on the MVC. If the MVC has been used for VTV export, this field reports **EXPVTV**.

#### %Used

the percentage of the MVC used by current VTVs.

#### %Avail

the percentage of the MVC that is physically available for use.

#### %Frag

the percentage of the MVC that contains non-current VTVs. This space is not usable until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained.

**Media Size (MB)**

the size of the MVC (MB). This will only be determined after VTCS has used an MVC. “UNKNOWN” appears in this field until VTCS migrates a VTV to the MVC.

**Times Mounted**

the number of times that the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory.

**STATUS**

one or more of the following statuses:

**I**

The MVC has been initialized.

**B**

The MVC has an error that should be investigated. The error may not make the MVC unusable, but VTCS will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked “B”. After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred for subsequent migrations, and recalls from the MVC may cause VTCS to drain it. This error condition may be accompanied by messages SLS6686, SLS6687, SLS6688, SLS6690, and/or SLS6693.

Any of the following conditions can cause this MVC error:

- MVC corrupted by another job (other than VTCS/VTSS).
- Attempt to use a read-only MVC for migration.
- A DDR swap failure.
- An RTD failure.

**L**

The MVC was not mounted in response to the last mount request. The MVC can still be used for migration, but will not select the MVC for migration for 12 hours after it is marked “L”. After the 12 hour period, the MVC will be least preferred. This condition will clear itself the next time that the MVC is mounted.

**D**

A data check was reported for this MVC. VSM will not use this MVC again for migration.

**R**

the MVC has been marked read-only.

**U**

one of the following usage statuses:

**U**

the MVC is available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

-

the MVC is not available for output (migration, reclamation, export, or consolidation).

**A**

The MVC is either being audited or the audit failed. If the audit failed, VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, rerun the `AUDIT` against this MVC.

**C**

The MVC is a consolidation MVC.

**E**

The MVC is an export MVC.

**F**

There is no space available on the MVC.

**J**

Either you issued `MVCDRain Eject` for the MVC or the MVC was ejected for update by a `RACROUTE` call. The MVC will not be used again for migration or recall. To clear this condition, use `MVCDRain` against MVC without the `Eject` option.

**N**

Either:

- The MVC is being drained because of:
  - An automatic drain or demand reclaim.
  - An explicit `MVCDRain` command.

**OR**

- The previous `DRAIN` request failed, in which case VTCS will not use the MVC for migration. To clear this condition, enter `MVCDRain` against MVC without the `Eject` option.

**X**

The MVC has reached the maximum VTVs per MVC.

**T**

The MVC is retired.

**M**

The MVC has an invalid `MIR`.

**Last Mounted**

the date and time that the MVC was last mounted and the VTSS where the MVC was last used.

**ACS ID**

the ACS where the MVC resides.

**Owner/Consolidate Time**

If the MVC is empty, this field is null. If the MVC is a consolidation MVC, this field displays the time of the consolidation. If the MVC is a migration MVC and contains current VTVs, this field displays the MVC's Storage Class. If no Storage Class was explicitly assigned via the `MGMTclass` statement, the default Storage Class is the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration.

If VTCS receives a request to migrate a VTV that is assigned to an invalid Management Class, VTCS will dynamically create the `!ERROR` Storage Class and migrate the VTVs defined by the invalid Management Class to the `!ERROR` Storage Class. Use this Storage Class to identify and correct invalid Management Classes, drain the affected MVCs, and resubmit the request.

**MVC Detailed Report**

The MVC detailed report provides all the fields from the MVC summary report and a separate section that lists additional fields. Figure 84 shows an example of these additional fields from an MVC detailed report.

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY		PAGE 0003
TIME 11:28:30		MVC EVS102 DETAIL REPORT		DATE 2002-06-03
VTV	SIZE	BLOCK	MANAGEMENT	
VOLSER	(MB)	ID	CLASS	
X20041	76.00	00000000	M5	
X20043	76.00	134009C7	M5	
X20044	76.00	2A40138D	M5	
X20045	76.00	C6401D53	M3	
X20047	76.00	A5402719	M3	
5 VTVS FOUND FOR MVC:EVS102				
WARNING VTV COUNT:5 DOES NOT MATCH MVC SUMMARY RECORD VTV COUNT:22 FOR MVC:EVS102				

**Figure 84. Example MVC detailed report (additional fields)**

The following list describes the additional fields for the MVC detailed report.

**VTV Volser**

the volsers of the VTVs on the MVC.

**Size (MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB).

**Block ID**

the logical block ID of the beginning of the VTV on the MVC.

**Management Class**

the VTV's Management Class.

**Note:** The detailed report also lists the number of VTVs found on the MVC. If there is a discrepancy between the VTV count and the MVC record, the report also describes this discrepancy.

## Flat File Record Format

Table 8 shows the record format of the flat file produced by MVCRPT.

**Table 8. MVCRPT flat file record format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Description
0	0	start of record		start of MVC flat file record
0	0	integer	4	record length
4	4	character	1	character set type of text fields
		X'61'		ASCII
		X'6E'		EBCDIC
5		character	1	record type 'M' (indicates an MVC report)
6	5	character	6	MVC volser
12	C	integer	4	number of current VTVs on the MVC
16	10	integer	4	percentage of the MVC used by current VTVs
20	14	integer	4	percentage of the MVC that is available for use
24	18	integer	4	percentage of the MVC that contains non-current VTVs, which is not available for use until it is reclaimed or the MVC is drained
28	1C	integer	4	number of times that the MVC has been mounted for writing or reading since it was added to the MVC inventory
32	20	time_t	4	the date that the MVC was last mounted (time_t format)
36	24	integer	4	size of the MVC (MB)
40	28	time_t	4	Consolidation date/time (time_t format) or X'00'
44	2C	character	1	MVC exported (Y or N)
45	2D	character	1	MVC initialized (I or -)
46	2E	character	1	MVC broken (B or -)
47	2F	character	1	MVC lost (L or -)
48	30	character	1	MVC has data check (D or -)
49	31	character	1	MVC readonly (R or -)

**Table 8. MVCRPT flat file record format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Description
50	32	character	1	MVC Usage status: - Not usable A AUDIT status C Set CONSOLIDATE status E EXPORT status F FULL status J EJECT status N DRAIN status U Usable
51	33	character	1	MVC Retired (T or -)
52	34	character	1	MVC has invalid MIR (M or -)
53	35	character	2	ACS location of MVC
55	37	character	8	MVC was last mounted on this VTSS
63	3F	character	8	Owning VTSS name or Storage Class name



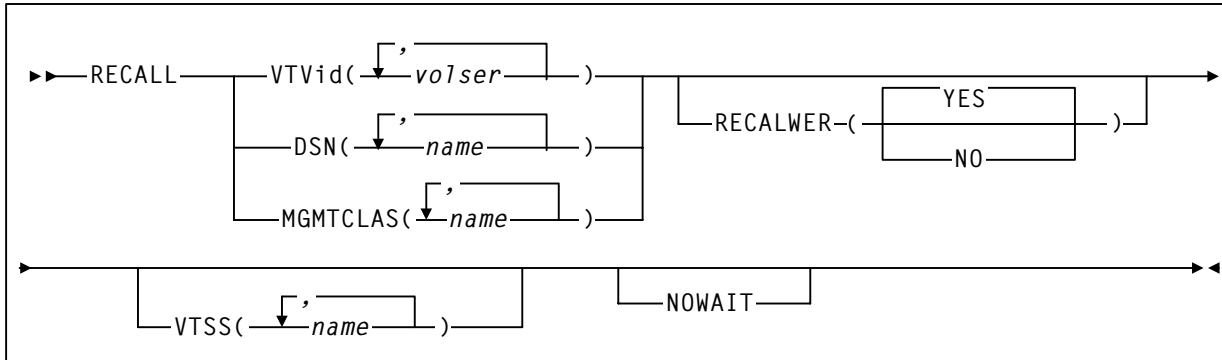
## QUERY

See “DISPLAY” on page 37.

## RECALL

The RECALL does demand recalls of VTVs to a VTSS.

### Syntax



**Figure 85.** RECALL *syntax*

### Parameters

#### VTVid

specifies the VTVs that VSM recalls.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs. You can also specify one or more ranges.

#### DSN

specifies data sets used to select VTVs to recall.

*name*

the data set name. Table 7 on page 84 describes the valid wildcard for data set names.

#### MGMTCLAS

specifies one or more Management Classes that determine one or more VTVs to recall.

*mgmt-class-name* | *mgmt-class-list*

the names of one or more Management Classes that you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.



**Note:** The VTVid, DSN, and MGMTCLAS parameters are mutually exclusive.

**VTSS**

specifies where the VTVs are recalled as follows:

- If you do not specify a VTSS (the default), VTCS attempts to recall the VTVs to the VTSS of creation if it is accessible. Otherwise VTCS recalls the VTVs to the VTSS with the lowest DBU.
- If you specify a single VTSS, VTCS attempts to recall the VTVs to the specified VTSS if it is accessible. Otherwise, VTCS recalls the VTVs to the VTSS with the lowest DBU.
- If you specify a list of VTVs, VTCS attempts to recall the VTVs to the VTSS of creation if it is on the list and accessible, otherwise VTCS recalls the VTVs to the VTSS with the lowest DBU on the list.

*vtss-name*

the names of one or more VTSSs.

**RECALWER**

specifies whether VTCS recalls VTVs with read data checks.

YES

recall VTVs with read data checks (the default).

NO

Do not recall VTVs with read data checks.

**NOWAIT**

specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

**Usage**

Use the RECALL to do demand recalls of VTVs to a VTSS; for more information.

**Command Example**

To run RECALL to recall VTVs determined by Management Class MCLAS1 to VTSS1 and return immediately, enter the following:

```
.VT RECALL MGMTCLAS(MCLAS1) VTSS(VTSS1) NOWAIT
```

## JCL Requirements

The following are the required and optional statements for the RECALL JCL:

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the migrate report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (RECALL utility name and parameters).

## JCL Example

Figure 86 shows example JCL to run RECALL to recall VTVs determined by Management Class MCLAS1 to VTSS1 and return immediately.

```
//MIGRATE    EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB    DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT   DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN      DD *  
            RECALL MGMTCLAS(MCLAS1) VTSS(VTSS1) NOWAIT
```

*Figure 86. Example JCL for the RECALL utility (recall by Management Class)*

## RECLAIM

The RECLAIM does demand MVC space reclamation. The RECLAIM can also override the CONFIG RECLAIM settings for the THRESHLD, MAXMVC, and CONMVC parameters.

### Syntax

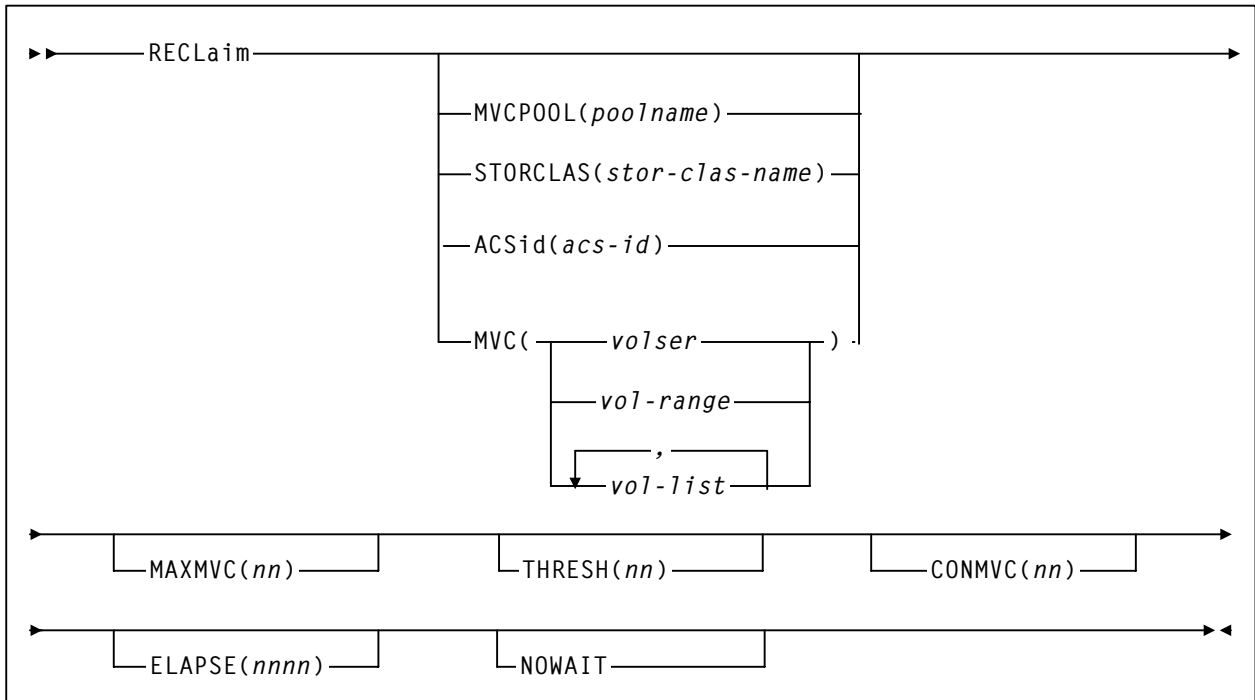


Figure 87. RECLAIM *syntax*

### Parameters

#### MVCPOOL

reclaim the MVCs in the specified Named MVC Pool.

*poolname*

the name of a Named MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPOOL control statement; for more information, see “MVCPOOL Control Statement” on page 188.

#### STORCLAS

reclaim the MVCs in the specified Storage Class.

*stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORCLAS control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

**ACSid**

reclaim the eligible MVCs in the specified ACS.

*acs-id*

The specified ACS.

**MVC**

reclaim the specified MVC(s).

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more MVCs. You can also specify individual MVCs and ranges in a list. For example:

**(MVC000-MVC005,MVC010,MVC015)**

**MAXMVC(*nn*)**

specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by a single space reclamation task. Valid values are 1 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

For automatic space reclamation to start, the number of eligible MVCs (determined by the THRESH parameter) must also exceed the MAXMVC value.

**THRESH(*nn*)**

specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. If not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

**NOWAIT**

specifies that the utility does not wait for the operation to complete and returns after the request is submitted.

**CONMVC(*nn*)**

specifies the maximum number of MVCs that VTCS concurrently processes for both drain and reclaim.

Valid values are 1 to 99. If not specified, the default is the CONMVC value specified on the CONFIG RECLAIM statement.

**ELAPSE(*nnnn*)**

specifies the maximum time for the reclaim in minutes. If the maximum time expires, VTCS issues message SLS6682I.

Valid values are 1 to 1440. If not specified, there is no time limit on the reclaim process.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

## Usage

Use the RECLAIM to do demand MVC space reclamation.

To select the MVCs to reclaim, you can specify one of the following parameters:

- MVCP00L to reclaim the MVCs in a Named MVC Pool.
- STORCLAS to reclaim the MVCs in a Storage Class.
- ACSid to reclaim the eligible MVCs in a single ACS.
- MVC to reclaim the reclaim the specified MVC(s).

You can specify only one of the MVCP00L, STORCLAS, ACSid, or MVC parameters. If you do not specify one of these parameter, space reclamation selects MVCs from the Named MVC Pool (if implemented) or media type (for multiple MVC media environments) most in need of free space.

VSM reclaims space on only those MVCs whose percentage of fragmentation and the resources required to move the VTVs justify the reclamation. The CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD parameter determines when an MVC is considered for reclamation, and free space must exist on the MVC for reclamation processing. The CONFIG RECLAIM MAXMVC parameter specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed by the RECLAIM. You can use the RECLAIM to override the CONFIG RECLAIM THRESHLD, MAXMVC, and CONMVC settings.

You can also specify the maximum time for the reclaim in minutes on the ELAPSE parameter. Note that there are several limiting factors that influence reclaims (for example, MAXMVC and ELAPSE). VTCS enforces the strictest limiting factor. For example, if you run RECLAIM and specify ELAPSE equal to 5 hours and MAXMVC equal to 10 and VTCS reclaims 10 MVCs in one hour, then VTCS terminates the reclaim before the ELAPSE value expires.



VTCS and HSC must be active to process a RECLAIM request.

## Command Examples

To reclaim the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1, override the CONFIG RECLAIM MAXMVC and THRESHLD settings, and return after the request is submitted, enter the following:

```
.VT RECLAIM STORCLAS(STORCL) MAXMVC(20) THRESH(70)
```

To reclaim MVCs MVC000 - MVC015, override the CONFIG RECLAIM MAXMVC and THRESHLD settings, and return after the request is submitted, enter the following:

```
.VT RECLAIM MVC(MVC000-MVC015) MAXMVC(20) THRESH(70)
```

## JCL Requirements

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the RECLAIM report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (RECLAIM utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples

Figure 88 shows example JCL to reclaim the MVCs in Storage Class STORCL1, override the CONFIG RECLAIM MAXMVC and THRESHLD settings, and return after the request is submitted.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
RECLAIM STORCLAS(STORCL) MAXMVC(20) THRESH(70)
```

**Figure 88.** RECLAIM utility example: reclaiming MVCs by Storage Class

Figure 89 shows example JCL to reclaim MVCs MVC000 - MVC015, override the CONFIG RECLAIM MAXMVC and THRESHLD settings, and return after the request is submitted.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
RECLAIM MVC(MVC000-MVC015) MAXMVC(20) THRESH(70)
```

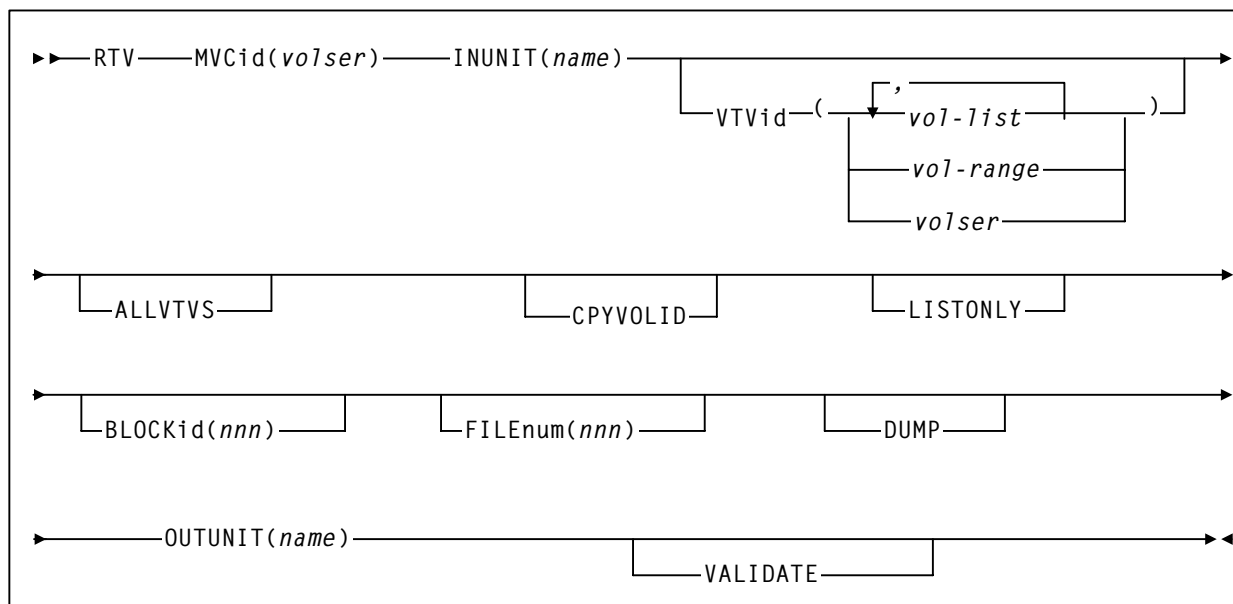
**Figure 89.** RECLAIM utility example: reclaiming MVCs by MVC ID



## RTV Utility

The RTV utility converts VTVs contained on MVCs to data sets on Nearline volumes (real tape volumes).

### Syntax



**Figure 90.** RTV utility syntax

### Parameters

#### MVCid

specifies the MVC that contains the VTVs that RTV converts to Nearline volume(s) which become real tape versions of the VTVs.

*volser*

the MVC volser.

#### INUNIT

the name to use to allocate the input tape unit. You can specify an MVS unit address, an esoteric name, or a generic name. The valid values are the same as for the UNIT= JCL parameter.

*name*

the unit name.

#### VTVid

specifies one or more VTVs to convert.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

**ALLVTVS**

convert the most current copy of all VTVs on the specified MVC. That is, if there are multiple copies of a VTV on the specified MVC, RTV only converts the most current copy of the VTV.



**Note:** The VTVid and ALLVTVS parameters are mutually exclusive.

**CPYVOLID**

copy the VTV internal volser from the VTV to the output volume VOL1 record. The default is to not copy the VTV VOLID.



**Caution:** Use the CPYVOLID parameter carefully! The volser of the output tape will be changed to the volser of the VTV. If the output tape has an external label or if the output is directed to another VTV, this will cause label mismatches and can cause unpredictable and undesirable results.

**Note:**

- If the output tape is non-labelled or has a non-standard tape label, CPYVOLID will be automatically specified for this VTV decompression, and a standard label tape will be created on the output device.
- RTV supports VTVs created with standard or ANSI labels. If you do not specify CPYVOLID, RTV processes these label types as described in Table 9. Note that this only applies to the VOL1 record. The HDR1/HDR2 labels are always copied from the VTV by RTV for every VTV processed.

**Table 9. RTV VTV Label Processing (CPYVOLID Not Specified)**

VTV Label Type	Output Standard Label	Output ANSI Label	Output Non-Label
Standard label	VOL1 label not copied	WTOR issued	VOL1 label is copied
ANSI label	WTOR issued	VOL1 label not copied	VOL1 label is copied

In Table 9, the WTOR is as follows:

SWSRTV - Label mismatch - Reply RELABEL, RETRY, or CANCEL

The operator responses produce the following results:

RELABEL

Decompress the RTV and overwrite the volser on the output volume.

RETRY

Mount another output volume and retry the operation.

CANCEL

Do not decompress the RTV.

**LISTONLY**

lists (but does not convert) the VTVs on the specified MVC. For more information, see “RTV LISTONLY Listing” on page 135.

**BLOCKID**

the logical block ID where the VTV begins on the MVC.

*nnn*

the logical block ID (8 hexadecimal characters).



**Hint:** The LISTONLY parameter listing on “RTV LISTONLY Listing” on page 135 supplies a Block ID value that you can use as input to the RTV utility to convert a VTV to a Nearline volume.

**FILEnum**

the logical data set number of VTV on the MVC.

*nnnnn*

the logical data set number (1 to 5 decimal characters).



**Note:** The LISTONLY, BLOCKid, and FILEnum parameters are mutually exclusive. In addition, if you specify the ALLVTVs parameter, or if a list or range of VTVs is specified, the FILEnum parameter is ignored.

**DUMP**

produce a SOC3 abend dump if RTV cannot decompress a VTV. If you specify DUMP, create a SYSMDUMP DD JCL statement to capture the dump.

**OUTUNIT**

the name to use to allocate the output tape unit. You can specify an MVS unit address, an esoteric name, or a generic name. The valid values are the same as for the UNIT= JCL parameter. This parameter is required if you do not specify LISTONLY.

*name*

the unit name.

**Interfaces**

SWSRTV only.

**Usage**

Use the RTV utility when data is required that resides on VTVs that have been migrated to MVCs and no active VSM system is available. RTV takes a VTV from an MVC, decompresses the VTV, then writes the data to a single output tape (real tape volume) so the data can be read by user applications. The RTV utility is a stand-alone utility; that is, you can run this utility when VSM is down but the MVS system is up. Also note that the RTV utility is included on the VTCS product tape and is also available for download from the StorageTek Customer Resource Center (CRC). Both versions are identical.

If you downloaded the RTV utility from the CRC for use at a site that does not have NCS/VTCS software installed, you must do the following:

- Install the downloaded version of RTV per instructions on the CRC.
- APF authorize the RTV load library you just created.
- In “JCL Examples” on page 130, substitute the DSN you picked for the RTV load library for DSN h1q.SLSLINK on the STEPLIB DD statement(s).

**What the RTV Utility Can Recover**

The RTV utility can recover:

- All or specified VTVs from a specified MVC. If you do not know the location of the most current version of a VTV on the MVC, specify only the VTV volser, and RTV will convert the most current version of the VTV it finds on this MVC.
- A VTV at a specified block ID on a specified MVC. The LISTONLY parameter listing on “RTV LISTONLY Listing” on page 135 supplies a Block ID value that you can use as input to the RTV utility to convert a VTV to a Nearline volume. Specifying the volser and Block ID speeds positioning time.
- A VTV specified by logical data set number on a specified MVC. Specifying the volser and logical data set number will have a much longer positioning time compared to specifying volser and Block ID. Using volser and Block ID is the preferred method to access a single VTV.



**Note:** If more than one VTV is specified, or if no BLOCKID or FILENUM parameter is specified, the entire MVC will be read and the MVC contents displayed as part of the output. Reading of the entire MVC is necessary to insure that only the most current copy of a VTV is decompressed.

## General Usage Guidelines

- The output volume that contains the converted VTV(s) must be at least 800 Mb (capacity of a 3490E cartridge) to ensure that it can contain an individual VTV.
- The VTCS MVCRPT on page 106 and VTCS VTVRPT on page 156 produce VTV and MVC reports that provide information to specify which copy of a VTV you want RTV to recover. Ensure that you have a current copy of these reports before you run the RTV utility. In addition, to help identify the VTVs you want to convert, you can use the LISTONLY parameter to produce a list of the VTVs on an MVC.

Because multiple copies of the same VTV can exist on the same or different MVCs, **study carefully** your VTV and MVC reports and LISTONLY listings to ensure that you are using the correct MVC to convert the most current copy of a VTV!

- The RTV utility does not update the system catalog or TMC with information about the converted volumes; you must do this manually.

## Security Considerations

- You must have read access both to the VTVs you want to convert and to the MVC that contains these VTVs or your system's security application cannot be running. Otherwise, the conversion will fail.
- Ensure that you APF authorize the RTV utility load library.
- RTV makes no attempts to bypass any TMS protection. All RTV tape mounts are subject to full TMS control.

## JCL Requirements

The following are required or optional statements for the RTV utility JCL:

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the RTV modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination of the RTV utility report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSRTV program (RTV utility name and parameters).

SYSMDUMP

optional DD to capture dump.



**Note:** Because the RTV utility must be capable of rewriting the tape standard labels on the output unit and positioning over label information on the input unit, Dynamic Allocation is used to invoke bypass label processing (BLP) on the tape volumes. This requires that the library that contains the SWSRTV executable code be APF authorized.

## JCL Examples

Listing the VTVs on an MVC

Figure 91 shows example JCL to lists the VTVs on MVC MVC001.

```
//JOBVRECJOB (account),programmer
//RUNRTV EXEC PGM=SWSRTV,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
RTV MVC(MVC001) INUNIT(/1AB4) LISTONLY
/*
//
```

**Figure 91. Example JCL to run the RTV utility: LISTONLY run**

Converting a Single VTV by Specifying Its Volser

Figure 92 shows example JCL to run the RTV utility to convert VTV VTV200 on MVC MVC001, which will be mounted on a 3490E transport. The output (converted VTV VTV200) goes to the output volume mounted on transport 280, and RTV copies the VTV VOLID from the VTV to the output volume.

```
//JOBVRECJOB (account),programmer
//RUNRTV EXEC PGM=SWSRTV,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
RTV MVC(MVC001) INUNIT(3490E) VTV(VTV200) CPYVOLID OUTUNIT(280)
/*
//
```

**Figure 92. Example JCL to run the RTV utility: single VTV by volser**

Converting a Single VTV by Specifying Its Volser and Block ID

Figure 93 shows example JCL to run the RTV utility to convert VTV VTV200 at block ID x'8EA484AB' on MVC MVC001, which will be mounted on a 3490E transport. The output (converted VTV VTV200) goes to the output volume mounted on transport 480.

```
//JOBVRECJOB (account),programmer
//RUNRTV EXEC PGM=SWSRTV,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=A
//SLSIN DD *
RTV MVC(MVC001) INUNIT(3490E) VTV(VTV200) BLOCK(8EA484AB)
OUTUNIT(480)
```

**Figure 93. Example JCL to run the RTV utility: single VTV by volser and block ID**

## RTV Utility Report Messages

The RTV report displays the following messages:

Block number too large in compressed data

**Explanation:** An error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Chunked record logic error

**Explanation:** An error was found while processing a chunked data record for a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Decompress invalid length parameter

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Decompress invalid parameter list

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Decompress logic error

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Decompress pointer to work area is zero

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Dynamic allocation error. Reason Code = xxxx-xxxx

**Explanation:** An error was encountered while attempting to dynamically allocate the INUNIT or OUTUNIT device. Refer to the IBM manual *MVS Authorized Assembler Services Guide* for a description of the dynamic allocation reason codes.

FILEnum of zero is invalid

**Explanation:** A FILEnum() value of 0 is invalid. The utility terminates with return code 12.

I/O error on input MVC

**Explanation:** An I/O error was encountered while reading a MVC. Further processing is stopped. The utility terminates with return code 12.

I/O error on output volume

**Explanation:** An I/O error was encountered while writing the output VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Invalid compressed data block read

**Explanation:** This indicates that an invalid data record was found while processing this VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Invalid VTV page number encountered

**Explanation:** A record sequence error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Invalid VTV record encountered

**Explanation:** An error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

MVC volser # does not match requested volser #

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as the input MVC did not match that requested by the MVCid() parameter. The utility terminates with return code 12.

MVC record length error

**Explanation:** A length error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.



No algo byte found in compressed data

**Explanation:** An error was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

No HDR1 record found for requested VTV

**Explanation:** Following positioning by a BLOCKid() statement, there was no HDR1 record located at the desired position. Remove the BLOCKid statement and rerun the utility. The utility terminates with return code 12.

No HDR1 record found on input MVC

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as a MVC contained no HDR1 record. The utility terminates with return code 12.

No UHL1 record found on input MVC

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as a MVC contained no UHL1 record. The utility terminates with return code 12.

No VOL1 record found on input MVC

**Explanation:** The volume mounted as a MVC contained no VOL1 record. The utility terminates with return code 12.

NULL input buffer pointer

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

NULL output buffer pointer

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

Requested VTV not found on MVC

**Explanation:** The volser requested by the VTVID() parameter was not found on the MVC. The utility terminates with return code 12.

## Spanned length final error

**Explanation:** An error was found while processing a spanned data record for a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

## Spanned length intermediate error

**Explanation:** An error was found while processing a spanned data record for a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

## Unexpected request on input I/O

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing is stopped. The utility terminates with return code 12.

## Unexpected end of tape on output volume

While writing the output VTV, an end of tape indication was encountered. The VTV must be completely contained on a single output volume. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

## Unexpected request on output I/O

**Explanation:** This indicates a program logic error. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

## Unexpected tape mark on input MVC

**Explanation:** An unexpected tape mark was found on a MVC. Further processing is stopped. The utility terminates with return code 12.

## VTvid range parameter is invalid

**Explanation:** An invalid range value was found in the VTvid() specification. The utility terminates with return code 12.

## VTV logical data check encountered

**Explanation:** A data check indicator was found in a compressed data record while processing a VTV. Further processing of this VTV is stopped. The VTV will be marked in the RTV Decompress Report output. The utility will continue to process other VTVs as necessary.

VTV volser # does not match requested volser #

**Explanation:** Following positioning by a BLOCKid() or FILEnum() statement, the VTV volser did not match that requested by the VTVid() parameter. The utility terminates with return code 12. Remove the BLOCKid or FILEnum() statement and rerun the utility.

## RTV LISTONLY Listing

Figure 94 shows an example of the listing that RTV produces when you specify the LISTONLY parameter.

SWSRTV	(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility			
PAGE 0001					
TIME 14:23:33		Control Card Image Listing			
DATE 12/01/00					
RTV MVC(C83107) LISTONLY					
SWSRTV	(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility			
PAGE 0002					
TIME 14:23:33		MVC C83107 Contents Report			
DATE 12/01/00					
VTV	File	Block	<---Last Used--->		VTV
Volser	#	ID	Date	Time	Status
VV6825	1	00000000	20020Nov30	12:07:56	
VV6863	2	92002F0F	20020Sep27	12:57:54	
VV6893	3	92002F18	20020Aug18	08:57:26	
VV0403	4	92002F21	20020Aug18	08:57:26	

**Figure 94. Example RTV LISTONLY listing**

This report lists the VTV's:

- Volser
- Logical file number on the MVC
- Block ID on the MVC
- Last used time
- Status - Not Current, or if blank, the VTV is current

## RTV Decompress Listing

Figure 95 shows an example of the listing that RTV produces when you do not specify the LISTONLY parameter (that is, you run RTV to convert VTVs to Nearline volumes).

SWSRTV	(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility			
PAGE 0001					
TIME 14:28:33		Control Card Image Listing			DATE 2002-1-18
RTV MVC(C8228) VTV(VV6800-VV6900) CPYVOLID					
SWSRTV	(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility			
PAGE 0002					
TIME 14:28:33		MVC C83223 Contents Report			DATE 2002-1-18
VTV	File	Block	<---Last Used--->		VTV
Volser	#	ID	Date	Time	Status
VV6070	1	00000000	20020Nov30	12:07:56	
VV0874	2	2B001384	20020Sep27	12:57:54	
VV0772	3	A3002707	20020Aug18	08:57:26	
VV6828	4	9B002AB9	20020Aug18	08:57:26	Not current
VV6828	5	9B002AC2	20020Aug18	08:57:26	
VV6826	6	9B002ACB	20020Aug18	08:57:26	
SWSRTV	(1.0.0)	StorageTek VTCS RTV Utility			
PAGE 0003					
TIME 14:28:33		MVC C83223 Decompress Report			DATE 2002-1-18
VTV		Mounted		Final	Decompress
Volser		Volser		Volser	Status
VV6826		XX0772		VV6826	Successful
VV6828		XX0773		VV6828	Successful

**Figure 95. Example RTV Decompress Listing**

In addition to the contents fields shown in Figure 94 on page 135, the decompress listing shown in Figure 95 on page 136 lists the VTV's:

- Volser of the output Nearline volume as initially mounted
- Final volser of the output Nearline volume; if CPYVOLID is specified, the final volser will be identical to the VTV volser, otherwise is final volser is identical to the volser of the output Nearline volume as initially mounted
- Decompress status

# SET MIGOPT

SET MIGOPT changes the following migration parameters:

- Maximum and minimum concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks
- High and low AMTs

## Syntax

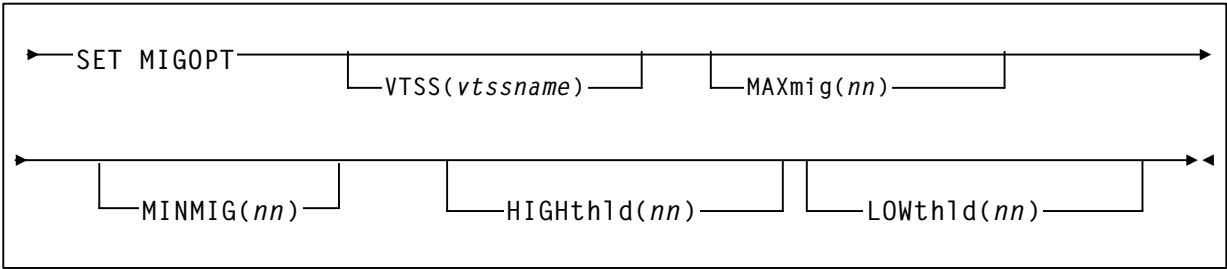


Figure 96. SET MIGOPT syntax

## Parameters

- VTSS**  
the VTSS whose migration parameters you want to change. If you do not specify a VTSS, the changes affect all VTSSs.
- vtssname*  
the VTSS identifier.
- MAXMIG(nn)**  
specifies the maximum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks.  
Valid values are 1 to the number of RTDs on the VTSS. There is no default; if you do not specify a value, the current value is unchanged.
- MINMIG(nn)**  
specifies the minimum number of concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks.  
Valid values are 1 to the MAXMIG setting. There is no default; if you do not specify a value, the current value is unchanged.
- HIGHthld**  
specifies the new high AMT.
- high-thr*  
the new high AMT as a percent of VTSS space. Valid values are 5 to 95 and must be greater than the LOWthld value.
- LOWthld**  
specifies the new low AMT.
- low-thr*  
the new low AMT as a percent of VTSS space. Valid values are 5 to 95 and must be less than the HIGHthld value.

**Interfaces**

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

**Usage**

Use SET MIGOPT to change following:

- Maximum and minimum concurrent automatic migration, immediate migration, and migrate-to-threshold tasks.
- High and low AMTs.

.Using SET MIGOPT:

- You can change the LAMT, the HAMT, or both.
- Changes to the AMTs take effect immediately.
- If you try to change global values (no VTSS specified) and the values are not valid for one VTSS (for example, MAXMIG(5) and one VTSS only has 4 RTDs connected), VTCS will not change values for any VTSSs.



**Note:** You can also change the AMTs with either the MIGRATE or the CONFIG VTSS LOW and HIGH parameters; see “MIGRATE” on page 84 and “VTSS” on page 4. Note, however, that a future release of VTCS will drop support of the MIGRATE SET HIGHthld and LOWthld parameters.

**Command Examples**

To change MAXMIG to 5 and MINMIG to 3, enter:

```
.VT SET MIGOPT MAXMIG(5) MINMIG(3)
```

To change the high AMT to 70% and the low AMT to 25%, enter:

```
.VT SET MIGOPT HIGH(70) LOW(25)
```

**JCL Requirements**

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the RECLAIM report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (RECLAIM utility name and parameters).

**JCL Examples**

Figure 97 shows example JCL to change MAXMIG to 5 and MINMIG to 3.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
SET MIGOPT MAXMIG(5) MINMIG(3)
```

*Figure 97. RECLAIM JCL example to change MAXMIG to 5 and MINMIG to 3*

Figure 98 shows example JCL change the high AMT to 70% and the low AMT to 25%.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
SET MIGOPT HIGH(70) LOW(25)
```

**Figure 98. RECLAIM JCL to change the high AMT to 70% and the low AMT to 25%**

# TRACE

TRace starts or stops event tracing for specified VTCS components.

## Syntax

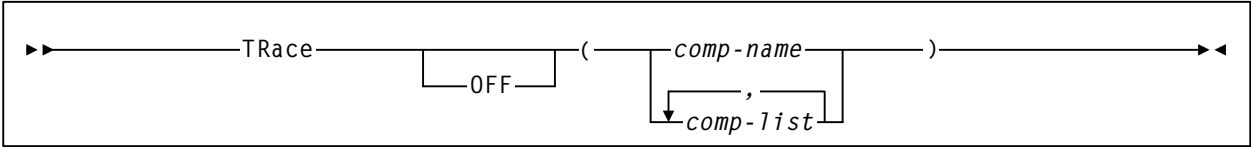


Figure 99. TRace syntax

## Parameters

- OFF
    - stops tracing for the specified components.
  - comp-name
    - specifies one of the following components:
    - VTCS
      - traces the VTCS component.
  - comp-list
    - specifies a list of components separated by commas or blanks.
- Use TRace to start or stop event tracing for specified VTCS components.

## Usage

Do not run a trace unless a StorageTek software support representative asks you to do so. You then send the trace file to StorageTek for diagnosis.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

## Command Example

To start tracing for the VTCS component requests, enter the following:  
**.VT TR VTCS**

## JCL Requirements

- STEPLIB
  - specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.
- SLSPRINT
  - specifies the destination for the RECLAIM report.
- SLSIN
  - specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (function name and parameters).



**JCL Example**

Figure 100 shows example JCL start tracing for the VTCS component requests.

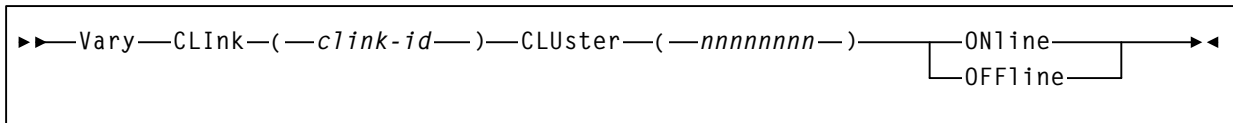
```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
TR VTCS
```

*Figure 100. JCL example to start tracing for the VTCS component requests*

## VARY CLINK

Vary CLink changes CLINK states.

### Syntax



**Figure 101.** Vary CLINK **syntax**

### Parameters

CLink  
the specified CLINK.

*clink-id*  
the link ID.

CLUster  
the specified Cluster connected by the specified CLINK.

*nnnnnnnn*  
the 1 to 8 character identifier of the Cluster.

ONline  
vary the specified CLINK online.

OFFline  
vary the specified CLINK offline.

### Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

## Usage

Use Vary CLINK to change CLINK states. For example, if a CLINK fails or requires service, you can enter a VT Vary CLink OFFline command to vary the CLINK offline. You enter a VT Vary CLink ONline command to vary the CLINK online.

Table 10 describes CLINK states.

**Table 10. CLINK States**

If you specify the following Vary CLink parameter...	The CLINK first goes to state...	And then goes to state...
ONline	<b>Online Pending</b> - In online pending state, the online process has started but has not completed.	<b>Online</b> - In online state, the CLINK is online and available for replication work.
OFFline	<b>Offline Pending</b> - In offline pending state, the offline process has started but has not completed. Current allocations continue to complete the replication of any VTVs being handled when the VARY OFF was issued. When all current allocations complete, the CLINK goes to offline state for all active hosts.	<b>Offline</b> - in offline state, The CLINK is offline to all hosts and does not accept replication work.

## Command Example

To vary CLINK 7 on Cluster CLUSTER1 online, enter:

```
.VT V CLI(7) CLU(CLUSTER1) ON
```

## JCL Requirements

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the RECLAIM report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (function name and parameters).

## JCL Example

Figure 102 shows example JCL to vary CLINK 7 on Cluster CLUSTER1 online.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *

V CLI(7) CLU(CLUSTER1) ON
```

**Figure 102. JCL example to vary CLINK 7 on Cluster CLUSTER1 online**

# VARY RTD

Vary RTD changes RTD states.

## Syntax

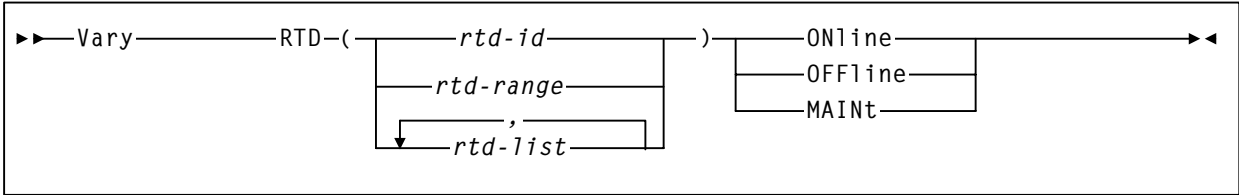


Figure 103. Vary RTD syntax

## Parameters

- RTD
- change the state of the specified RTDs.
  - rtd-id*, *rtd-range*, or *rtd-list*
    - the unit addresses of one or more RTDs. Lists and ranges of RTDs are limited to 64 items for VSM2s and VSM3s and 256 items for VSM4s.
- ONline
- vary the specified RTDs online to their connected VTSSs.
- OFFline
- vary the specified RTDs offline to their connected VTSSs.
- MAINT
- vary the specified RTDs offline (maintenance mode) to their connected VTSSs.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

## Usage

Use Vary RTD to change RTD states. The state change applies to all VTSSs connected to the specified RTDs. That is, an RTD must be in the same state to all connected VTSSs.



**Caution:** If you are sharing transports with MVS, make sure to vary the transports offline to all MVS systems before varying these RTDs online to VSM and vice versa.

## Command Example

To vary RTD B10 online, enter:

```
.VT V RTD(B10) ON
```

**JCL Requirements**

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the RECLAIM report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (function name and parameters).

**JCL Example**

Figure 104 shows example JCL to vary RTD B10 online.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
  
V RTD(B10) ON
```

*Figure 104. JCL example to vary RTD B10 online*

# VARY VTSS

Vary VTSS changes VTSS states on all hosts.

## Syntax

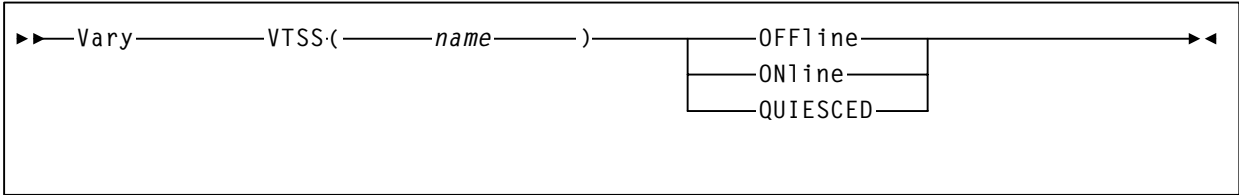


Figure 105. Vary VTSS syntax

## Parameters

- VTSS  
change the state of the specified VTSS. For more information about VTSS states, see Table 11 on page 147.
- vtssname*  
the VTSS identifier.
- ONline  
vary the specified VTSS online.
- OFFline  
vary the specified VTSS offline.
- QUIESCED  
vary the specified VTSS to quiesced state.



**Note:** Vary VTSS **does not** change the state of the VTDs or RTDs associated with the specified VTSS!

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility and VT command.

**Usage**

Table 11 describes VTSS states.

**Table 11. VTSS States**

<b>If you specify the following</b> Vary VTSS <b>parameter...</b>	<b>The VTSS first goes to</b> <b>state...</b>	<b>And then goes to state...</b>
ONline	<b>Online Pending</b> - In online pending state, the online process has started but has not completed on all hosts.	<b>Online</b> - In online state, the VTSS is online, available, and accepts both front-end and back-end work. If the VTSS was offline, when it goes online, VTCS issues a warning message recommending a VTSS audit.
QUIESCED	<b>Quiescing</b> - In quiescing state, VTCS does not direct any DD allocation to the VTSS, which still accepts pending mounts to allow those long running jobs with unit=aff chains to complete. When all VTDs are no longer in use (their UCBs are not allocated on MVS), the VTSS goes to quiesced state. In quiescing state, the VTSS continues to accept and process back-end work; for example, migrates, recalls, and audits.	<b>Quiesced</b> - In quiesced state, the VTSS continues to accept and process back-end work; for example, migrates, recalls, and audits. That is, you can use the recall and migrate commands and utilities to do these operations using the quiesced VTSS.
OFFline	<b>Offline Pending</b> - In offline pending state, the offline process has started but has not completed on all hosts. VTCS immediately shuts down the VTSS and interrupts and purges all active tasks and purges all queued tasks. The VTSS server task terminates and no longer accepts new front-end and back-end work. VTCS creates new VTVs and mounts/dismounts existing VTVs only on alternate VTSSs, if they are available.	<b>Offline</b> - in offline state, The VTSS is offline to all hosts and does not accept either front-end or back-end work.  If a copy of a VTV is resident on an offline VTSS and also on an MVC and a job requires the VTV, VTCS automatically recalls the VTV to an alternate VTSS, if available.

Use Vary VTSS to change VTSS states as described in Table 12.



**Note:** Vary VTSS changes VTSS states on all hosts regardless of which host issued the command or ran the utility.

**Table 12.** Vary VTSS *Usage Scenarios*

If...	And you want to...	Do the following...
A VTSS fails	Take the VTSS offline and continue processing by recalling migrated VTVs to an alternate VTSS.	Vary the failed VTSS offline. Jobs that require VTVs that have migrated from the failed VTSS are automatically recalled to the alternate VTSS.
A VTSS requires maintenance or will be taken out of service.	Take the VTSS offline and continue processing by recalling migrated VTVs to an alternate VTSS.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Vary the VTSS to quiesced state.</li> <li>2. If the VTSS will be taken out of service or the maintenance requires a "clean" VTSS, Do a migrate-to-threshold 0%. When the migrate completes, do a VTSS audit to ensure that all VTVs were successfully migrated.</li> <li>3. Vary the VTSS offline so that maintenance can be applied or it can be taken out of service. Jobs that require VTVs that have migrated from the failed VTSS are automatically recalled to the alternate VTSS.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> It may also be necessary to vary VTDs and associated paths offline to MVS.</p>



If...	And you want to...	Do the following...
An offline VTSS is ready to come back online.	Use the VTSS.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Dismount any VTVs still mounted in the VTSS (MVS perspective), by doing either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Use the MVS UNLOAD command to dismount the VTVs.</li> <li>•Use the VARY OFFLINE command to vary offline the VTD where the VTV is mounted, which will also dismount the VTV.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Clear any boxed VTD conditions.</li> <li>3. Vary the VTSS to quiesced state.</li> <li>4. Audit the VTSS.</li> <li>5. Vary the VTSS online.</li> </ol>

**Command Example**

To vary VTSS VTSS01 online, enter:

```
.VT V VTSS(HVTSS10) ON
```

The following shows sample output from this VT Vary VTSS ONline command:

```
Vary submitted to VSM system
Vary completed (0)
Vary online of VTSS HVTSS10 initiated from host ECCY
RTD task starting for device V0EE22F0
RTD task starting for device V0EE22F1
RTD task starting for device V08A22F4
VTSS HVTSS10 now online on host ECCL
VTSS HVTSS10 now online on host MVSU
VTSS HVTSS10 now online on host EC31
Vary online (local) of VTSS HVTSS10 complete
VTSS HVTSS10 has been offline; a VTSS audit is recommended
VTSS HVTSS10 server ready; state is online
VTSS HVTSS10 now online on host ECCY
Vary online (global) of VTSS HVTSS10 complete
```

**JCL Requirements**

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the RECLAIM report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (function name and parameters).

**JCL Example**

Figure 104 shows example JCL to vary VTSS VTSS01 online.

```
//RECLAIM EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'  
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR  
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SLSIN DD *  
  
V VTSS(HVTSS10) ON
```

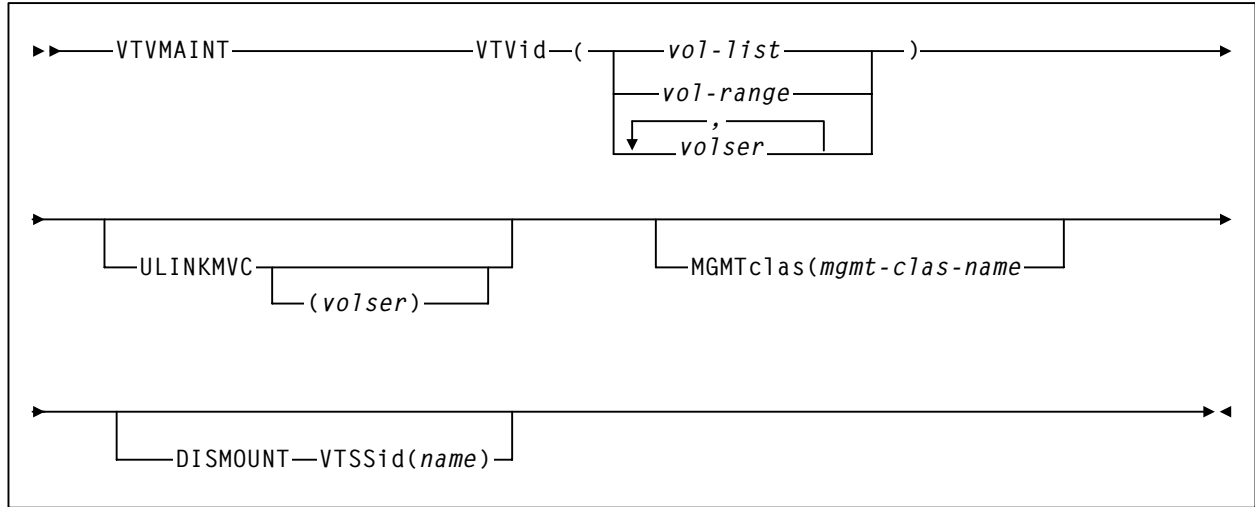
*Figure 106. JCL example to vary VTSS VTSS01 online*

## VTVMaint

VTVMaint does the following:

- Unlinks VTVs from MVCs,
- Sets the VTV Management Class, and
- Logically dismounts specified VTVs in an offline VTSS.

### Syntax



**Figure 107.** VTVMaint *syntax*

### Parameters

VTVid

specifies the VTVs.

*volser*, *vol-range* or *vol-list*  
the volsers of one or more VTVs.

ULINKMVC

unlink the specified VTVs.

*volser*

unlink the specified VTVs from the specified MVC.

MGMTclas

set the Management Class of the VTVs.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name that you specified on the MGMTclas control statement. For more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

DISMOUNT VTSSid

logically dismount the specified VTVs in the specified VTSS.

*name*

the VTSS name.

## Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.

## Usage

Use VTMMAINT to do the following:

- Unlink VTVs from MVCs,
- Set the VTV Management Class, and
- Logically dismount specified VTVs in an offline VTSS.



**Note:** Running VTMMAINT also produces an MVC report of the volumes affected by the VTMMAINT job.

## Changing VTV Management Class and Unlinking VTVs from MVCs

You can use VTMMAINT to change a VTV's Management Class. If the new Management Class specifies a different Storage Class, the VTV's current location on 1 or 2 MVCs is incorrect. The following procedure tells how to use VTMMAINT to change a VTV's Management Class and Storage Class.



### To change a VTV's Management Class and Storage Class:

#### 1. Recall the VTV.

The VTV must be VTSS-resident for the unlink to succeed in Step 2.

#### 2. Use VTMMAINT ULINKMVC to unlink the VTV from the MVC(s) where it is located.

#### 3. Use VTMMAINT MGMTclas to assign a new management class.

#### 4. Remigrate the VTV to place it on the correct MVCs.

## Logically Dismounting VTVs in an Offline VTSS

If a VTV is mounted when a VTSS goes offline and a copy of the VTV exists on an MVC, VTCS will not recall the migrated VTV to an alternate VTSS because the VTV is in mounted status on the offline VTSS. In this situation, you can use the VTVMaint to logically dismount VTVs in the offline VTSS (turn off the “mounted” bit in the CDS), then recall the VTV to an alternate VTSS. VTCS records each successful VTV dismount in the SMF14STA field of the SMF Subtype 14 record. For more information, see “SLSSMF14 - VTCS SMF Subtype 14 Record” on page 237. The VTVRPT (UNAVAIL) option reports the status of unavailable VTVs in an offline VTSS. For more information, see “VTVRPT” on page 156.



**Warning: Don’t** dismount an unavailable VTV in an offline VTSS unless you are absolutely sure that the MVC copies, if any, of the VTV, are identical in content to the unavailable VTV! Otherwise, you risk recalling a VTV with back-level data to an alternate VTSS! For example, a VTV mounted for read is probably safe to dismount for recall to an alternate VTSS. A VTV mounted for write, however, is probably not safe to dismount because it has probably been updated and the MVC copies are therefore back-level.

The following procedure provides the general steps you use to logically dismount a VTV and access that VTV from a different VTSS.

### To logically dismount a VTV and access that VTV from a different VTSS:

#### 1. Vary the VTSS offline to VTCS with the following command:

**VT VARY VTSS(*name*) OFFLINE**

If I/O was active and the VTSS failed, MVS should box the VTDs and dismount any mounted VTVs *from the MVS perspective*. However, if communication with the VTSS failed before the VTSS actually dismounted any mounted VTVs, they may still be online to VTCS. Therefore, you first need to vary the VTSS offline to VTCS.

If MVS boxed the VTDs and dismounted any mounted VTVs, go to Step 3. Otherwise, continue with Step 2.

#### 2. Dismount the VTV (MVS perspective).

You cannot remount the VTV on a VTD in another VTSS if MVS still considers it mounted in the offline VTSS. Do either of the following:

- Use the MVS UNLOAD command to dismount the VTV.
- Use the VARY OFFLINE to vary offline the VTD where the VTV is mounted, which will also dismount the VTV.

### 3. Run VTVMaint, specifying the offline VTSS and VTV(s) you want to logically dismount.

For example, to logically dismount VTVs VV6823, VV6825, and VV6688 in offline VTSS01, code the following SLSIN DD statement in your JCL:

```
VTVMaint DISMOUNT VTV(VV6823,VV6825,VV6688) VTSS(VTSS01)
```

If migrated copies of the dismounted VTVs exist that an online VTSS can access, you can now use this VTSS to access the VTVs.



**Caution:** If the VTV copy mounted in the offline VTSS was modified and not migrated, the MVC copy that you recall to an alternate VTSS is not current! Therefore, StorageTek strongly recommends that you do not recall these non-current MVC copies!



**Hint:** When the offline VTSS is ready to be brought back online, StorageTek strongly recommends that you audit the VTSS before running production jobs that use the VTSS. Also ensure that you clear any boxed VTD conditions before issuing the VTSS VARY ONLINE command.

## JCL Requirements

STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the VTVMaint report.

SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (VTVMaint utility name and parameters).

## JCL Examples

Figure 71 shows example JCL to run the VTVMaint utility.

```
//VTVMaint EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN, PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK, DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
VTVMaint DISMOUNT VTV (VV6823, VV6825, VV6688) VTSS (VTSS01)
```

**Figure 108.** VTVMaint utility example

**VTVMaint Report**      Figure 84 shows an example of a VTVMaint report for the following command:  
**VTVMaint VTV(X00000-X00002) ULinkMVC MGMTCLAS(M1)**

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 0001					
TIME 06:32:03		VTV MAINTENANCE										DATE 2002-04-19					
VTV	RC																
X00000	04																
X00001	04																
X00002	04																
VTVMaint EXCEPTION REPORT																	
VTV X00000 IS ALREADY IN MGMTCLAS M1																	
VTV X00001 IS ALREADY IN MGMTCLAS M1																	
VTV X00002 IS ALREADY IN MGMTCLAS M1																	
SLS1315I SWS500.V5.CDS WAS SELECTED AS THE PRIMARY CONTROL DATA SET																	
SWSADMIN (5.1.0)		STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 0002					
TIME 06:32:03		VTCS VTV REPORT										DATE 2002-04-19					
VTV	SIZE	COMP%	<----CREATION----->		<----LAST USED----->		MIGR	SCRT	RESD	DUPX	REPL	MGMT	MVC1	BLOCK	MVC2	BLOCK	VTSSNAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME						CLASS		ID		ID	
X00000	0.01	0	2002MAY19	05:02:08	2002MAY19	05:22:08	-	-	R	-	-	M1					
X00001	0.01	0	2002MAY19	05:02:08	2002MAY19	05:22:08	-	-	R	-	-	M1					
X00002	0.01	0	2002MAY19	05:02:08	2002MAY19	05:22:08	-	-	R	-	-	M1					
3 INITIALIZED VTVS PROCESSED																	
0 NON-INITIALIZED VTVS PROCESSED																	

**Figure 109. VTVMaint Report**

As shown in Figure 109, the VTVMaint report shows:

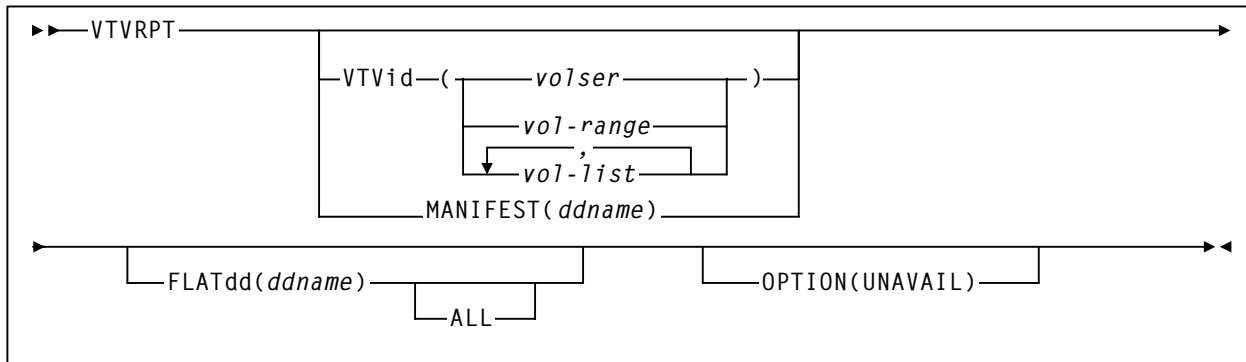
- Status of VTVs processed - volser and return code (0 - all updates completed, 4 - some updates completed, 8 - no updates completed).
- An exception report of the reason for all uncompleted updates.

A VTV report; for more information, see “VTV Report” on page 160.

## VTVRPT

The VTVRPT reports the status of your VSM system's VTVs.

### Syntax



**Figure 110.** VTVRPT *syntax*

### Parameters

#### VTVid

specifies the VTVs for the report. If you do not specify the VTVs, the report includes all initialized VTVs in your VSM system. A VTV is initialized when VTCS has used it at least once.

*volser*, *vol-range*, or *vol-list*

the volsers of one or more VTVs.

#### MANIFEST

specifies the input ddname of the manifest file used to generate the report. **Note that** you can specify a merged manifest file or multiple manifest files. Figure 57 on page 80 shows example JCL to run the IMPORT utility where the MANIFEST parameter specifies importing multiple generations of a file.

*ddname*

ddname of the manifest file.

#### FLATdd

specifies the output destination ddname if a flat file is required.

*ddname*

the ddname of the flat file included in the JCL.

#### ALL

specifies to report on all VTVs (including non-initialized volumes). If you do not specify ALL, the flat file reports only initialized VTVs.

#### OPTION(UNAVAIL)

specifies to report only on unavailable VTVs (VTVs in an offline VTSS).

### Interfaces

SWSADMIN utility only.



## Usage

Use the VTVRPT to report the status of your VSM system's VTVs. The report includes all VTVs that contain current data and all scratched VTVs. For more information, see "VTV Report" on page 160. Figure 111 on page 157 shows example JCL to run VTVRPT to produce a report and Figure 116 on page 160 shows the report format. VTV reports only list VTVs that have been used, not VTVs that are defined but have not been used. Note that you can specify the MANIFEST parameter to generate a report from an export manifest file instead of from the HSC CDS.

You can also report on only unavailable VTVs (VTVs in offline VTSSs). For more information, see Figure 113. on page 158 and "VTV Report" on page 160.

To produce reports for VSM, ExPR requires a flat file format of the VTV report as input. Figure 113 on page 158 shows example JCL to run VTVRPT to produce flat file format of the report for ExPR. Table 13 on page 164 shows the flat file record format.

You can produce VTV reports in structured XML format. You can then process the XML output in a programming language of your choice (the World Wide Web has samples of C code that parse XML).

## JCL Requirements

The following are the required and optional statements for the VTVRPT JCL:

### STEPLIB

specifies the link library (SLSLINK) that contains the VTCS and HSC modules.

### SLSPRINT

specifies the destination for the VTV report.

### SLSIN

specifies the input to the SWSADMIN program (VTVRPT utility name and parameters).

### SLSXML

specifies the output destination for XML output. Allocate this file as RECFM=VB, LRECL=255.

## JCL Examples

Figure 111 shows example JCL to run VTVRPT to produce a report of all VTVs in your VSM system.

```
//VTVR EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
VTVRPT
```

*Figure 111. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility*

Figure 112 shows example JCL to run VTVRPT to produce a report using manifest file REMOTE1 as input.

```
//VTVR   EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//REMOTE1 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.REMOTE1,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN   DD *
          VTVRPT MANIFEST(REMOTE1)
```

**Figure 112. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (manifest file input)**

Figure 113 shows example to run VTVRPT to produce a flat file report format of all VTVs for input to ExPR.

```
//VTVR   EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//VTVOUT  DD DSN=FEDB.FLAT,UNIT=SYSALLDA,DISP=OLD
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN   DD *
          VTVRPT FLATDD(VTVOUT)
```

**Figure 113. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (flat file output for ExPR)**

Figure 114 shows example to run VTVRPT to report only on unavailable VTVs (VTVs in an offline VTSS).

```
//VTVR   EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK,DISP=SHR
//VTVOUT  DD DSN=FEDB.FLAT,UNIT=SYSALLDA,DISP=OLD
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN   DD *
          VTVRPT OPTION(UNAVAIL)
```

**Figure 114. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (unavailable VTVs only)**

Figure 115 shows example to run VTVRPT to report only on unavailable VTVs (VTVs in an offline VTSS) in structured XML format.

```
//VTVR EXEC PGM=SWSADMIN, PARM='MIXED'
//STEPLIB DD DSN=h1q.SLSLINK, DISP=SHR
//SLSXML DD DISP=NEW, DSN=SYS2.VTVRPT.XML,
          UNIT=SYSDA, SPACE=(CYL,(1,1),
          DCB=(RECFM=VB, LRECL=255, BLKSIZE=31030)
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
VTVRPT OPTION(UNAVAIL)
//REXX EXEC PGM=IKJEFT01, DYNAMNBR=20
//SYSPROC DD DESN=SYS2.CLIST, DISP=SHR
//SYSTSPRT DD SYSOUT=*
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//I DD DSN=SYS2.VTVRPT.XML, DISP=OLD
//SYSTSIN DD *
PROFILE MSGID
%XMLREXX
```

*Figure 115. Example JCL for the VTVRPT utility (unavailable VTVs only, structured XML format)*



**Note:** XML output can consume **considerable** space. You may want to consider routing your XML output to a VTV so that the output is compressed.

**VTV Report**

Figure 116 shows an example of a VTV report and Figure 117. on page 161 shows an example of a VTV report with the UNAVAIL option. This report lists only unavailable VTVs in three sections--unavailable mounted on a VTD, unavailable VTSS-resident, and unavailable VTSS-resident and fenced.

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)			STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY										PAGE 0002		
TIME 06:32:03			VTCS VTV REPORT										DATE 2002-07-19		
VTV	SIZE	COMP%	<----CREATION----->		<----LAST USED----->		MIGR	SCRT	RESD	DUPX	REPL	MGMT	MVC1	BLOCK	VTSSNAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME						CLASS	ID	ID	
X00T00	0.04	84	2002JUL16	05:02:08	2002JUL19	05:41:00	M	-	R	-	-		EVS17	860406BB	VTSS16
X00002	<MOUNT>		2002JUL14	06:54:35	2002JUL19	07:43:46	M	-	R	D	-	VCL1	EVS16	BF40239	VTSS17
X00003	15.60	84	2002JUL14	10:05:05	2002JUL19	05:41:28	M	-	R	-	-		EVS20	BD4020BC	VTSS16
X00004	0.36	84	2002MAY28	08:51:20	2002JUL19	05:41:30	M	S	R	-	-		EVS20	BB402141	VTSS16
X00005	15.60	84	2002JUL14	10:05:14	2002JUL19	05:41:31	M	-	R	-	-		EVS20	BB40214D	VTSS16
X00006	15.60	84	2002JUL14	10:08:23	2002JUL19	08:45:31	C	-	-	D	-	VCL1	EVS25	BF402040	VTSS17

**Figure 116. Example output from VTVRPT**

SWSADMIN (5.1.0)			STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY											PAGE 0002			
TIME 06:59:03			UNAVAIL MOUNTED VTV REPORT											DATE 2002-03-20			
VTV	SIZE	COMP%	<----CREATION----->		<----LAST USED----->		MIGR	SCRT	RESD	DUPX	REPL	MGMT	MVC1	BLOCK	MVC2	BLOCK	VTSSNAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME						CLASS		ID		ID	
Y09053	<MOUNT>		2002DEC19	09:34:14	2002MAR20	05:55:44	-	-	R	-	-	M9					HBVTSS16
SWSADMIN (5.1.0)			STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY											PAGE 0003			
TIME 06:59:03			UNAVAIL RESIDENT VTV REPORT											DATE 2002-03-20			
VTV	SIZE	COMP%	<----CREATION----->		<----LAST USED----->		MIGR	SCRT	RESD	DUPX	REPL	MGMT	MVC1	BLOCK	MVC2	BLOCK	VTSSNAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME						CLASS		ID		ID	
X01007	156.24	89	2002JAN10	03:00:02	2002MAR01	04:51:47	-	S	R	-	-						HBVTSS16
X01010	3.90	0	2002MAR01	09:10:37	2002MAR01	09:10:37	-	-	R	-	-						HBVTSS16
X01014	3.90	0	2002MAR01	09:11:08	2002MAR01	09:11:08	-	-	R	-	-						HBVTSS16
X01021	3.90	0	2002MAR01	09:21:11	2002MAR01	09:21:11	-	-	R	-	-						HBVTSS16
SWSADMIN (5.1.0)			STORAGETEK VTCS SYTEM UTILITY											PAGE 0004			
TIME 06:59:03			UNAVAIL FENCED VTV REPORT											DATE 2002-03-20			
VTV	SIZE	COMP%	<----CREATION----->		<----LAST USED----->		MIGR	SCRT	RESD	DUPX	REPL	MGMT	MVC1	BLOCK	MVC2	BLOCK	VTSSNAME
VOLSER	(MB)		DATE	TIME	DATE	TIME						CLASS		ID		ID	
X01280	<FENCED>						-	-	-	-	-						
X04762	<FENCED>						-	-	-	-	-						
X04776	<FENCED>						-	-	-	-	-						
X02019	<FENCED>						-	-	-	-	-						
X10066	<FENCED>						-	-	-	D	-						
X10068	<FENCED>						-	-	-	D	-						

**Figure 117. Example output from VTVRPT (UNAVAIL option)**

## VTVRPT Report Fields

The following list describes the VTV report fields.

### **VTV Volser**

the VTV volser.

### **Size (MB)**

the uncompressed size of the VTV (MB). <**MOUNT**> indicates that the VTV was mounted when the report ran. <**FENCED**> indicates that the VTV's state is unknown. If <**FENCED**> appears, contact StorageTek software support.

### **Comp %**

the VTV compression percentage achieved. This is the difference between the uncompressed and compressed VTV size expressed as a percentage of the uncompressed VTV size. For example if a 100MB VTV compresses to 40MB then the compression% will be given as 60%. A compression of 0% indicates that no compression was possible on the VTV.

### **Creation Date and Time**

the date and time that the VTV was created.

### **Last Used Date and Time**

the date and time that the VTV was last used. This date and time value is updated by successful completion of a VTV mount, migrate, recall, or scratch.

### **Migr**

indicates whether the VTV has been migrated (M) or consolidated (C). If the VTV is both migrated and consolidated, a 'C' appears in this field. If the VTV has not been migrated, it is either VTSS resident or non-existent (not created or used, scratched, and deleted).

### **Scrt**

indicates whether the VTV has been scratched.

### **Resd**

indicates whether the VTV is resident in a VTSS.

### **Dupx**

indicates whether duplexing was specified for the VTV. When VSM migrates the VTV, it is copied to two different MVCs.

### **Repl**

one of the following VTV replication statuses:

-

the VTV has no replication requirements.

**R**

replication is required but has not started.

**S**

replication has started.

**C**

replication has completed.

**MGMT Class**

the name of the Management Class for the VTV specified.

**MVC1 and MVC2**

the MVC(s) that contain the VTV (for both migration and consolidation). If both of these fields are empty, the VTV has not been migrated or consolidated. If both of these fields list an MVC volser, the VTV was duplexed to these MVCs.

**Block ID**

the logical block ID of the beginning of the VTV on the MVC.

**VTSSNAME**

the VTSS where the VTV resides, or, if the VTV is migrated, the VTSS where the VTSS was last resident. If this field is empty, the VTV is non-existent (not created or used, scratched, and deleted).

## Flat File Record Format

Table 13 shows the record format of the flat file produced by VTVRPT.

**Table 13. VTVRPT flat file record format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Description
0	0	start of record		start of VTV flat file record
0	0	integer	4	record length
4	4	character	1	character set type of text fields
		X'61'		ASCII
		X'6E'		EBCDIC
5	5	character	1	record type 'V' (indicates VTV report)
6	6	character	6	VTV volser
12	C	character	8	VTSS where the VTV resides
20	14	integer	4	uncompressed VTV size (MB)
24	18	character	1	VTV migrated? (Y, N, or C)
25	19	character	1	VTV duplexed? (Y or N)
26	1A	character	6	MVC volser (first copy)
32	20	character	6	MVC volser (second copy)
38	26	character	1	VTV not current? (Y or N)
39	27	character	1	VTV scratched? (Y or N)
40	28	time_t	4	date VTV created (time_t format)
44	2C	time_t	4	date VTV last referenced (time_t format)
48	30	integer	4	blockid of VTV on first MVC
52	34	integer	4	blockid of VTV on second MVC
56	38	integer	2	compression percentage for VTV
58	3A	character	1	replicate indicator: C, R, S, or - For more information, see "VTV Report" on page 160.
59	3B	character	1	fenced indicator (Y or N)
60	3C	character	1	mounted indicator (Y or N)
61	3D	character	8	Management Class name



## Chapter 2. HSC Enhancements and Additions for VSM

---

This chapter contains reference information about the following enhancements and additions to HSC to support VSM:

- “DISPLAY Command” on page 167, that accepts the following parameters:
  - FEATures, that displays the HSC features set by the FEATures PARMLIB control statement.
  - MGMTDEF, that displays the data set and date and time loaded if MGMTclas control statements are active.
  - MVCDEF, that displays the data set and date and time loaded if MVCPool control statements are active.
- “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168, that specifies which VSM features are enabled.
- “MERGECDS Utility” on page 169, that can update a CDS or merge CDSs with VSM volume records.
- “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177, an HSC control statement that defines VSM Management Classes.
- “MGMTDEF Command” on page 185, a new HSC command that loads the MGMTclas statements from a specified definition data set.
- “MOUNT Command” on page 187, that can mount a specific or scratch VTV on a VTD and optionally assign a Management Class to the VTV.
- “MVCPOOL Control Statement” on page 188, an HSC control statement to define a pool of HSC volumes as MVCs
- “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191, an HSC control statement that defines VSM Storage Classes.
- “TAPEREQ Control Statement for HSC” on page 194, that can route tape data sets to VSM and pass a Management Class to VSM.
- “UNITATTR Control Statement” on page 200, that specifies VTD attributes, including unit address, model type (virtual), and VTSS with which it is associated.



**Hint:** See the *HSC System Programmer's Guide for MVS* for information about using the TAPEREQ and UNITATTR statements in a non-VSM (HSC only) environment.

- “VOLATTR Control Statement” on page 202, that specifies VTV attributes, including the volser and media type (virtual).

- “HSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements” on page 204
- “HSC ALLOC Command Enhancements” on page 204
- “HSC User Exit Enhancements” on page 205
- “HSC Batch API Enhancements” on page 205



**Note:** The following HSC enhancements are available via PTF as described below:

- The HSC MOUNT command can now mount a scratch or specific VTV on a VTD and optionally assigns a Management Class to the VTV. For more information, see “MOUNT Command” on page 187.
- The Programmatic Interface MOUNT request now supports an additional parameter of MGMTCLAS that can assign a VSM Management Class to the VTV. For more information, see “HSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements” on page 204.
- “HSC Operator Command Enhancements” on page 211
- “HSC DELDISP Parameter Enhancements” on page 217

# DISPLAY Command

For VSM, the HSC Display command displays the data set and date and time loaded if MGMTclas and/or MVCPool control statements are active and the HSC features set by the FEATures PARMLIB control statement.

## Syntax

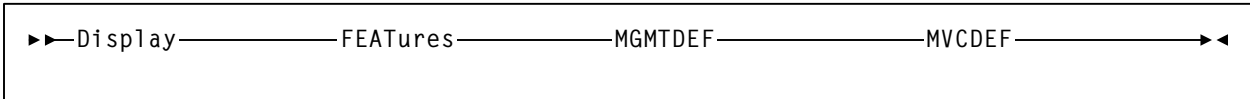


Figure 118. Display Command

Parameters	<div>FEATures<div>displays the HSC features set by the FEATures PARMLIB control statement.</div></div> <div>MGMTDEF<div>displays the data set and date and time loaded if MGMTclas control statements are active.</div></div> <div>MVCDEF<div>displays the data set and date and time loaded if MVCPool control statements are active.</div></div>
------------	--

**Usage** Use the HSC Display command to display the data set and date and time loaded if MGMTclas and or MVCPool control statements are active and the HSC features set by the FEATures PARMLIB control statement.

**Examples**

To display the data set and date and time loaded of an active MGMTclas statement, enter:

**D MGMTDEF**

To display the data set and date and time loaded of an active MVCPool statement, enter:

**D MVCDEF**

To display the HSC features set by the FEATures PARMLIB control statement, enter:

**D FEAT**

# FEATURES Control Statement

The HSC FEATURES control statement specifies which VSM features are enabled.

## Syntax

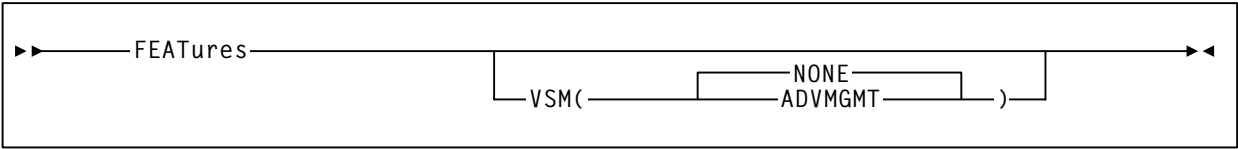


Figure 119. FEATURES Control Statement

## Parameters

- VSM**  
specifies which VSM Management Features are enabled.
- NONE**  
Basic Management only is enabled; the Advanced Management Feature is not enabled (the default). STORCLAS statements, the MGMTCLAS statement MIGPOL, RESTIME, CONSRC, and CONTGT parameters, and EXPORT and IMPORT are disabled. For more information about the MGMTCLAS parameters that are valid for Basic Management, see “Parameters - Basic Management Feature” on page 178.
- ADVMGMT**  
Both Basic and the following Advanced Management Features are enabled:
- STORCLAS statements; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.
  - MGMTCLAS statement MIGPOL, RESTIME, CONSRC, and CONTGT parameters; for more information, see “Additional Parameters - Advanced Management Feature” on page 181.
  - EXPORT and IMPORT; for more information, see “EXPORT” on page 72 and “IMPORT” on page 76.
- If the FEATURES PARMLIB control statement is not specified, Basic Management only is enabled.

## Usage

Use the HSC FEATURES control statement to specify which VSM features are enabled.

## Example

To enable the Advanced Management Feature, create the following statement:  
**FEAT VSM(ADVMGMT)**

# MERGECDs Utility

The enhanced MERGEcds utility can reconfigure a CDS or merge CDSs with VSM volume records.

## Syntax

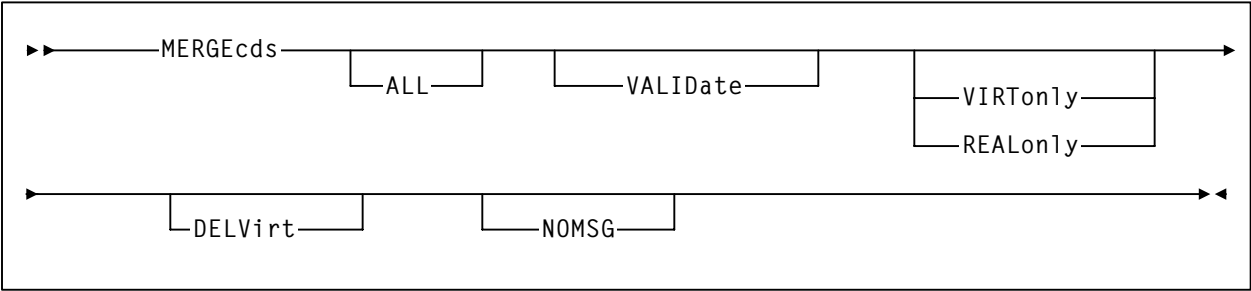


Figure 120.MERGEcds Utility Syntax

## Parameters

- VALIDate**  
specifies to only validate that the configurations to be reconfigured or merged are compatible, but not do the operation. MERGEcds VALIDate reports any duplicate, in-transit, and errant volumes.
- ALL**  
specifies to copy volume information for all ACSs and VTSSs from the "from" CDS to the "to" CDS. For a CDS merge, the ACS ID and LSM IDs, and VTSS identifiers must match.
- If you do not specify ALL, MERGEcds reads the parameters specified in the SLSMERGE DD statement, which specify the ACSs, LSMs, and VTSSs whose volume information you want to merge or reconfigure. ALL and SLSMERGE DD are mutually exclusive.
- You also specify the ALL parameter to convert a CDS to extended format.
- VIRTonly**  
specifies to use only VSM volume records.
- REALonly**  
specifies to use only real Nearline volume records.



As shown in Figure 120, VIRTonly and REALonly are mutually exclusive. See Table 14. on page 173 for more information about the MERGEcds parameter interactions.

**DELVirt**

specifies that VTV and MVC volume information is not copied to the “to” CDS if **both** of the following are true:

- The VTVs and MVCs defined in the “from” CDS are either uninitialized or empty. An empty VTV is not VTSS resident and has no current MVC copies. An empty MVC contains no current VTVs.
- The uninitialized or empty VTVs and MVCs in the “from” CDS are not defined in the “to” CDS. That is, no duplicate volsers exist.

**NOMSG**

suppresses message SLS4245I, which displays the volser of an MVC or VTV that was not copied to the “to” CDS. NOMSG has no effect if you do not also specify DELVirt.

**Usage**

Use the enhanced MERGEcds utility to update a CDS or merge CDSs with VSM volume records. For more information, see the following sections:

- “MERGEcds Procedure for VSM Environments”
- “MERGEcds Parameter Interactions” on page 173

You also specify the ALL parameter to convert a CDS to extended format.

**MERGEcds  
Procedure for VSM  
Environments**

This procedure is for using MERGEcds in a VSM environment. For information about using MERGEcds in a Nearline environment without VSM installed, see “MERGEcds Utility” in Chapter 5 of *HSC System Programmer's Guide*.


**To run MERGEcds in a VSM environment:**
**1. Before running MERGEcds, do the following:**

- a. Create VTV and MVC reports for each CDS that contains VSM records for comparison after the merge is complete.
- b. Ensure that the “to” CDS contains enough space to hold the VSM volume records from all CDSs to be merged **and** any new VTV and/or MVC ranges to be created. You may need to expand the “to” CDS if it does not contain enough space. If you are deleting VTV and/or MVC ranges, you must create a new “to” CDS, because you cannot to remove existing records from an existing CDS.
- c. Quiesce all real and virtual tape activity on the “from” CDS by shutting down HSCs that reference the “from” CDS to avoid losing active real and/or virtual operations during the merge. The “from” CDS is defined in the JCL for MERGEcds as shown in Figure 123 on page 175 and Figure 124 on page 176.

- d. You run MERGEcds on the MVS system that contains the “to” CDS, which must already be defined. You can run MERGEcds without stopping HSC on the MVS system that contains the “to” CDS, but HSC on this system should be running at base level (no tape activity) until MERGEcds completes and until you have verified the results of the merge and backed up the “to” CDS.



**Note:** If you want rename the “to” and “from” CDSs, StorageTek recommends that you shut down HSC on **both** the “to” and “from” systems. See the *HSC System Programmer's Guide* (“Control Statements and Start Procedure” in Chapter 3 and “Renaming Control Data Sets” in Chapter 2).

- e. Before running MERGEcds in a VSM environment, you must run VTCS CONFIG **even if there are no changes** to the VSM configuration to prepare for merging VTCS volume records.



**Note:** With CONFIG, you can only add MVC and VTV volsers, you cannot remove them. You can, however, use the DELVirt parameter to not copy MVC or VTV volsers to the “to” CDS; for more information, see “DELVirt” on page 170 and “MERGEcds Example: Merging CDSs with Duplicate VTSS Identifiers, Do Not Copy Volume Information for MVCs and VTVs” on page 176.

- f. If you also run MERGEcds to merge CDSs with Nearline volume information (for example, merging two ACSs where the “from” ACS contains MVCs), you may also need to do some or all of the tasks described in:
  - “Define and Select Nearline Volumes” in *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide*.
  - “MERGECDs Utility” in Chapter 3, “Control Statements and Start Procedure” in *HSC System Programmer's Guide for MVS*.
  - “Renaming Control Data Sets” in Chapter 2, “Host Software Component Functions” in *HSC System Programmer's Guide for MVS*.

## 2. Run MERGEcds as follows:

- To merge CDSs, both of which contain *different* VSM volume records, specify MERGE ALL or MERGE ALL VIRTonly. You would typically do this, for example, if the “from” CDS defines VTVs and MVCs for VTSS01 and VTSS02 and the “to” CDS defines VTVs and MVCs for VTSS05 and VTSS06 and there are no duplicate MVC or VTV volsers; see Figure 122 on page 175.
- To merge CDSs which have duplicate VTSS identifiers:
  1. Specify MERGE or MERGE VIRTonly.
  2. Rename the duplicate VTSS identifier by specifying a new identifier on the SLSMERGE TVTSS subparameter.

You would typically do this, for example, if the “from” CDS defines VTVs and MVCs for VTSS01 and VTSS02 and the “to” CDS defines VTVs and MVCs for “populated” VTSSs VTSS01 and VTSS02 and there are no duplicate MVC or VTV volsers; see Figure 123 on page 175.



**Note:** Before running MERGEcds to rename a VTSS, you must set the identifier to 99999999 at the LOP.

The virtual part of a CDS merge fails if either of the following occurs:

- There are duplicate MVC or VTV volsers or duplicate volsers between MVCs or VTVs and standard Nearline volumes in the “from” and “to” CDS.
- You specify DELVirt and the affected VTVs and MVCs do not meet the conditions described in “DELVirt” on page 170.



**Note:** If you also specify a merge of real volumes, it will complete even if the virtual merge fails.

## 3. After running MERGEcds, do the following:

- a. Produce VTV and MVC reports for the “to” CDS and compare with the reports you produced before the merge.
- b. If the “from” CDS contained MVC records or if you deleted one or more MVC ranges, you need to update the VOLATTR statements.
- c. Restart HSC on all LPARs where you shut down HSC and return HSC to full service level on all LPARs running at base service level.



**MERGEcds  
Parameter  
Interactions**

Table 14 describes the interactions of the MERGEcds parameters.

**Table 14.** MERGEcds *Parameter Interactions*

<b>If you specify...</b>	<b>The SLSMERGE DD file is...</b>	<b>And MERGEcds...</b>
MERGE ALL	not read	uses both real Nearline volume records and VSM volume records but does not allow renaming the VTSS.
MERGE ALL REALonly	not read	uses only real Nearline volume records (current MERGEcds behavior).
MERGE ALL VIRTonly	not read	uses only VSM volume records but does not allow renaming the VTSS.
MERGE	read	uses both real Nearline volume records and VSM volume records and allows renaming the VTSS.
MERGE REALonly	read and MERGEcds honors the FACS/TACS and FLSM/TLSM subparameters.	uses only real Nearline volume records (current MERGEcds behavior).
MERGE VIRTonly	read and MERGEcds honors the FVTSS/TVTSS subparameters.	uses only VSM volume records and allows renaming the VTSS.
MERGE REALonly VIRTonly	not read	operation fails, REALonly and VIRTonly are mutually exclusive.

## JCL Requirements

The following are the required and optional statements for the MERGEcbs JCL:

### SLSFCNTL

specifies the current primary copy of the “from” HSC CDS.

### SLSFCTL2

specifies the current secondary copy of the “from” HSC CDS. This is only required if HSC has been set up to run with a secondary copy.

### SLSFSTBY

specifies the current standby copy of the “from” HSC CDS. This is also only required if HSC has been set up to run with a standby copy.

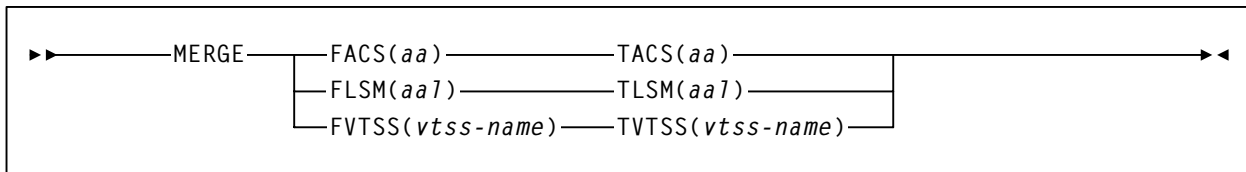
### SLSIN

specifies the input to the SLUADMIN program (MERGEcbs utility name and parameters).

### SLSMERGE

specifies the “from” and “to” ACSs, LSMs, or VTSSs to use for a merge. This parameter is optional and is mutually exclusive with the MERGEcbs ALL parameter.

## Syntax



**Figure 121.** SLSMERGE DD Statement Syntax

ACS and LSM IDs are valid hexadecimal values for Nearline systems. The *vtss-name* is a VTSS identifier.

FACS=*acs-id*

specifies the “from” ACS.

TACS=*acs-id*

specifies the “to” ACS.

FLSM=*lsm-id*

specifies the “from” LSM.

TLSM=*lsm-id*

specifies the “to” LSM.

FVTSS=*vtss-name*

specifies the “from” VTSS.

TVTSS=*vtss-name*

specifies the “to” VTSS.

## JCL Examples

MERGEcds Example:  
Reconfiguring a CDS  
with VSM Volume  
Information or  
Merging CDSs with  
Different VTSS  
Identifiers

Figure 122 shows example MERGEcds JCL to update a CDS with VSM volume information, such as for an initial VSM configuration. You can also use JCL such as shown in this example to merge CDSs with different VTSS identifiers.

```
//UPDATEVSM EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//SLSFCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSFCTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSFSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
MERGE ALL VIRT
/*
//
```

**Figure 122.** MERGEcds *example: updating a CDS or merging CDSs with different VTSS identifiers*

MERGEcds Example:  
Merging CDSs with  
Duplicate VTSS  
Identifiers

Figure 123 shows example MERGEcds JCL to merge CDS with duplicate VTSS identifiers, VTSS01 and VTSS02, that are renamed to VTSS03 and VTSS04 in the “to” CDS.

```
//MERGEVSM EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//SLSFCNTL DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSFCTL2 DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSFSTBY DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN DD *
MERGE VIRT
//SLSMERGE DD *
MERGE FVTSS(VTSS01) TVTSS(VTSS03)
MERGE FVTSS(VTSS02) TVTSS(VTSS04)
/*
//
```

**Figure 123.** MERGEcds *example: merging CDSs with different VTSS identifiers*

**MERGEcds Example:**  
 Merging CDSs with  
 Duplicate VTSS  
 Identifiers, Do Not  
 Copy Volume  
 Information for MVCs  
 and VTVs

Figure 124 shows example MERGEcds JCL to merge CDS with duplicate VTSS identifiers, VTSS01 and VTSS02, that are renamed to VTSS03 and VTSS04 in the “to” CDS. This example also specifies the:

- DELVirt parameter so that volsers of uninitialized or empty VTVs and MVCs are not copied to the “to” CDS.
- NOMSG parameter that suppresses message SLS4245I.

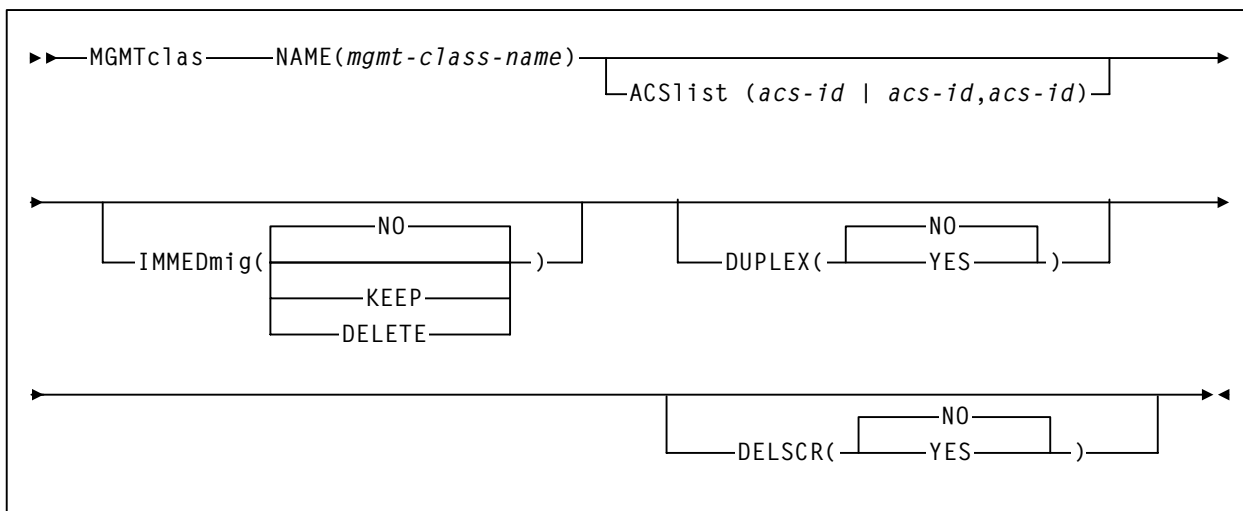
```
//MERGEVSM    EXEC PGM=SLUADMIN,PARM='MIXED'
//SLSFCTL     DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASEPRM,DISP=SHR
//SLSFCTL2    DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESEC,DISP=SHR
//SLSFSTBY    DD DSN=FEDB.VSMLMULT.DBASESBY,DISP=SHR
//SLSPRINT    DD  SYSOUT=*
//SLSIN       DD  *
MERGE VIRT DELV NOMSG
//SLSMERGE    DD  *
MERGE FVTSS(VTSS01) TVTSS(VTSS03)
MERGE FVTSS(VTSS02) TVTSS(VTSS04)
/*
//
```

**Figure 124.** MERGEcds *example: merging CDSs with different VTSS identifiers*

## MGMTCLAS Control Statement

The MGMTclas control statement defines a VSM Management Class. As shown in the following sections, the VSM feature you enable determines which MGMTclas parameters are valid; for more information, see “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168.

### Syntax - Basic Management Feature



**Figure 125.**MGMTclas Control Statement Syntax - Basic Management Feature

## Parameters - Basic Management Feature

### NAME

specifies the name of the Management Class.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name. This name must be 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters beginning with an alpha character and must follow SMS naming conventions.

### ACSlist

specifies the ACSs from which RTDs and MVCs are selected.

ACSlist is optional; if not specified, the default is the ACS specified on the CONFIG DEFLTACS parameter; for more information, see “DEFLTACS=acs-id” on page 18.

The ACSlist and MIGpol parameters are mutually exclusive.

See Table 15. on page 184 for information about using the DUPlex and ACSlist parameters.



**Note:** Regardless of the number of host to ACS connections in your configuration, VSM supports a maximum of two ACSs connected to each VTSS.

*acs-id | acs-id,acs-id*

Specify either one or two ACS IDs. An ACS ID has a hexadecimal value from 00 through FF.

### IMMEDmig

specifies whether VSM immediately migrates a VTV after dismounting it.

NO

specifies that VSM does not immediately migrate the VTV, but migrates it according to standard VSM migration criteria (the default).

KEEP

specifies that VSM immediately migrates a VTV and keeps a copy resident on the VTSS until the VTV become eligible for deletion.

DELETE

specifies that VSM immediately migrates the VTV and then deletes it from the VTSS.



**Note:** IMMEdmig KEEP and IMMEdmig DELETE are mutually exclusive with CONFIG HOST NOMIGRAT. If you specify both, the IMMEdmig value overrides NOMIGRAT, and VTCS does not issue a message about this override.

**DUPlex**

specifies whether VSM will migrate two copies of the VTV to two MVCs.

The DUPlex and MIGpol parameters are mutually exclusive.

See Table 15. on page 184 for information about using the DUPlex and ACSlist parameters.

**NO**

Do not duplex the VTV (the default).

**YES**

Duplex the VTV.

**DELSCR**

specifies whether VSM deletes scratched VTVs.

This parameter is optional.

**NO**

do not delete scratched VTVs (the default).

**YES**

delete scratched VTVs.



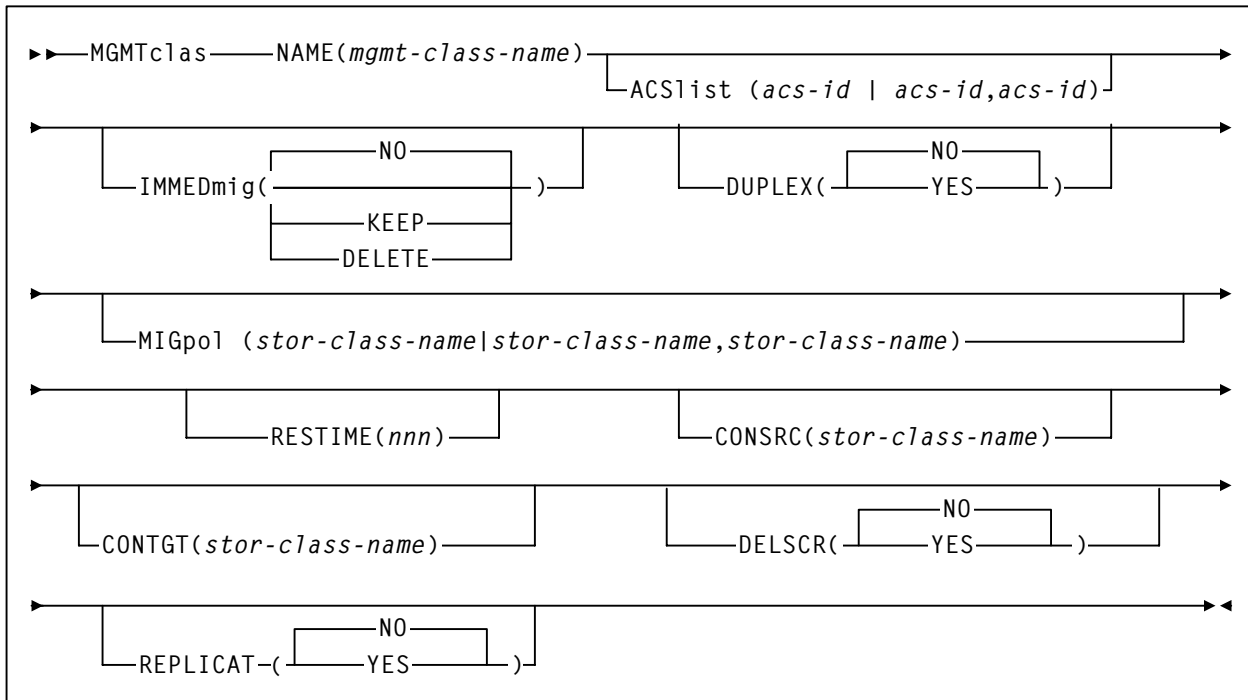
**Warning:** When you scratch a VTV with DELSCR YES attribute, **VSM erases the VTV data at scratch synchronization time**, which eliminates the ability “unscratch” a VTV to recover data!

**Also note** that when using HSC to perform scratch synchronization, **it is possible that a volume that is scratch** in the TMC at the beginning of scratch synchronization run and also scratch in the CDS from the previous scratch update run (and thus is in the list for HSC to scratch in the CDS) is accessed by a job during the scratch update run and written to and **made non-scratch** by the TMS in the TMC. **In this case, it is still possible for HSC to scratch the volume** because it was in the originally extracted list of volumes to be scratched.

Therefore, **StorageTek strongly recommends** that you **do not** run any jobs that use scratches during HSC scratch synchronization. For more information about HSC scratch synchronization with the Scratch Conversion Utility (SLUCONDB), see Chapter 5, “Utility Functions” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.

For more information about ExLM scratch synchronization with the SYNCVTB function, see “Using ExLM with VTCS (All Versions)” in Chapter 2, “Using ExLM to Manage Nearline and VTCS Resources” of *ExLM System Administrator’s Guide*.

## Syntax - Advanced Management Feature



**Figure 126.**MGMTclas **Control Statement Syntax - Advanced Management Feature**



## Additional Parameters - Advanced Management Feature

The following MGMTclas parameters are valid for the Advanced Management Feature in addition to the Basic Management Feature parameters described in “Parameters - Basic Management Feature” on page 178.

### MIGpol

specifies either one or two Storage Classes that specify the ACS and media type of migration MVCs. If you specify:

- One Storage Class, VTCS migrates one copy of a VTV.
- Two different Storage Classes (with different ACS values, different MEDIA values, or both), VTCS duplexes the VTV to two different MVCs.
- Two Storage Classes with identical ACS and MEDIA values, VTCS duplexes the VTV to the same ACS and media type but to two different MVCs.

**Note:** Two Storage Classes on MIGpol also affects how:

- VTV recall works.
- MVC space reclamation works.
- How VTV consolidation works

The DUPlex and MIGpol parameters are mutually exclusive.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value.

*stor-class-name* | *stor-class-name,stor-class-name*

the names of either one or two Storage Classes that you defined on the STORclas control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

### RESTIME

specifies how long VTCS attempts to keep a VTV as VTSS-resident before becoming a preferred automatic migration candidate.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value. Valid values are 1 to 9999.

The RESTIME and IMMEdmig(DELETE) parameters are mutually exclusive.

*nnn*

the residency time in hours.

**CONSRC**

specifies the Storage Class that species a preference for the source MVC ACS and media for consolidation of VTVs that are migrated and duplexed to two different MVC locations or media types. If the MVC in the specified Storage Class is unavailable, VTCS uses the MVC in the second Storage Class. CONSRC, therefore, is only valid if you specify one of two Storage Classes specified on the MIGPOL parameter.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value.

*stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORCLAS control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

**CONTGT**

specifies the Storage Class that determines the output MVC ACS and media for VTV consolidation. Note that the media preferencing is in the opposite order of the list of media types specified on the Storage Class.

This parameter is optional; there is no default value. If you do not specify a value for CONTGT, VTCS selects the output MVC as follows:

- For single-ACS and dual-ACS configurations, the media selection order for VTV consolidation.
- For dual-ACS systems, VTCS selects MVCs from the default ACS specified by the CONFIG DEFLTACS parameter; for more information, see “DEFLTACS=acs-id” on page 18.

*stor-class-name*

the name of a Storage Class that you defined on the STORCLAS control statement; for more information, see “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

**REPLICAT**

specifies whether VSM replicates the VTV.

**NO**

Do not replicate the VTV (the default).

**YES**

Replicate the VTV.

## Usage

Use the `MGMTclas` control statement to specify the name of a VSM Management Class and define policies for that class.

You can also specify a Storage Class on the `MIGpol`, `CONSRC`, and `CONTGT` parameters of the `MGMTclas` control statement. The `MIGpol`, `RESTIME`, `CONSRC`, `CONTGT`, and `REPLICAT` parameters are only valid if `FEATures VSM(ADVMGMT)` is specified; for more information, see “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168.

You use the `MGMTDEF` command to load `MGMTclas` and `STORclas` control statements, which must reside in the same data set for cross-validation; for more information, see “MGMTDEF Command” on page 185.

Storage Classes are never mixed on the same MVC. If you do not specify a Storage Class on the `MGMTclas` statement, the Storage Class defaults to the VTSS name.

For more information, see: “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191



If you specify the `ACSlist` parameter of the `MGMTclas` statement and the `CONFIG VTSS DEFLTACS` parameter, VTCS ignores the value on the `DEFLTACS` parameter.

## Using the DUPlex parameter

Table 15 describes possible scenarios using the DUPlex and ACSlist parameters.

**Table 15. MGMTclas ACSlist/DUPlex Scenarios**

If DUPlex is set to...	And ACSlist specifies...	Then VSM...
YES	two ACSs	migrates the VTVs to two MVCs, one in each ACS. (This scenario is the normal one for duplexing to two ACSs.)
YES	one ACS	migrates the VTVs to two MVCs in the ACS specified
NO	two ACSs	ignores the DUPlex policy and migrates the VTVs to two MVCs, one in each ACS.
NO	one ACS	migrates the VTVs to one MVC in the ACS specified

## Examples



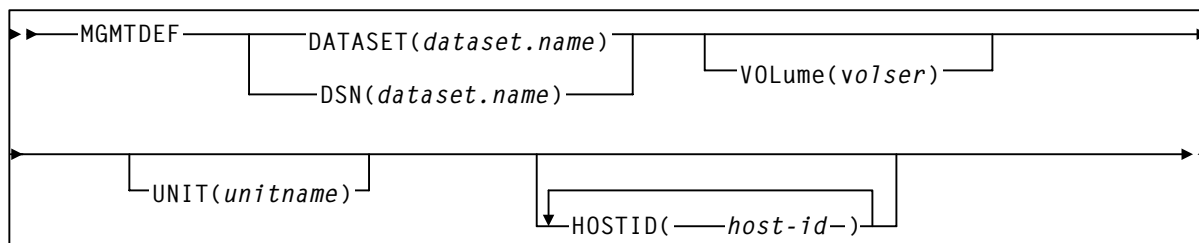
In the following example, Management Class MGMTCLS1 specifies VTV duplexing to two MVCs, one in ACS 00 and one in ACS 01 with an immediate migration of the VTV on dismount and a copy of the VTV kept in the VTSS.

```
MGMTclas NAME(MGMTCLS1) ACSL(00,01) IMMED(KEEP) DUP(YES)
```

## MGMTDEF Command

The MGMTDEF command loads the MGMTclas and STORclas statements from a specified definition data set.

### Syntax



**Figure 127.**MGMTDEF Command

### Parameters

#### DATASET or DSN

specifies the definition data set that contains the MGMTclas and STORclas statements to load.

*dataset.name*

the data set name.

#### VOLume

specifies the DASD volume where the definition data set resides. This parameter is optional, unless the data set is not cataloged, or the data set resides on a volume other than the volume indicated by the catalog.

*volser*

the DASD volser.

#### UNIT

specifies the DASD device where the definition data set resides.

*unitname*

the DASD unit name. If the definition data set is not cataloged and this parameter is omitted, the unit name defaults to SYSALLDA.

#### HOSTID

specifies the host for execution of the MGMTDEF command. This parameter is only valid when MGMTDEF is specified as a PARMLIB control statement.

*host-id*

specifies the name of one or more hosts from which to execute the MGMTDEF command. Multiple hosts must be separated by commas.

## Usage

Use the MGMTDEF command to load MGMTclas and STORclas statements, which must reside in the same data set for cross-validation.

For more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177 and “STORCLAS Control Statement” on page 191.

The MGMTDEF command is valid for base and full service levels of HSC. You can enter MGMTDEF as an operator command or specify MGMTDEF as a statement in the HSC PARMLIB. If you specify a MGMTDEF statement in the PARMLIB, HSC startup loads the specified MGMTDEF statements. Note that the HOSTID parameter is only valid when you specify MGMTDEF as a statement in the HSC PARMLIB. After HSC startup, you can enter a MGMTDEF command to dynamically reload another set of MGMTclas statements from a different definition data set. If you restart HSC, it reloads the MGMTclas statements specified by the MGMTDEF command in the PARMLIB.

## Examples

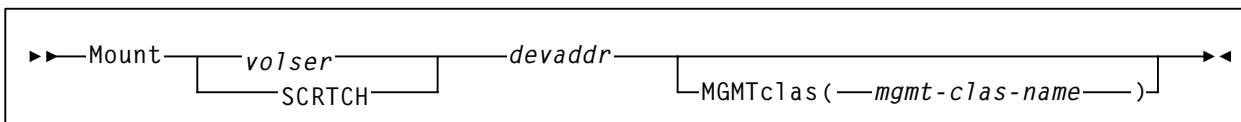
To load the MGMTclas and STORclas statements in data set hsc.parms on a host, enter:

```
MGMTDEF DSN(hsc.parms)
```

## MOUNT Command

The enhanced MOUNT command mounts a scratch or specific VTV on a VTD and optionally assigns a Management Class to the VTV.

### Syntax



### Parameters

*volser* | *SCRATCH*

specifies a specific VTV *volser* or the scratch VTV attribute (*SCRATCH*).

*volser*

the *volser* of a specific VTV.

*devaddr*

specifies the MVS device address of the VTD to use to mount the VTV.

*MGMTclas*

specifies a Management Class you defined on the *MGMTclas* control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name.

### Usage

Use the enhanced MOUNT command to mount a scratch or specific VTV on a VTD and optionally assign a Management Class to the VTV.



**Note:** For a non-scratch VTV, the MOUNT command assigns a Management Class **only** if:

- The CONFIG GLOBAL statement specifies *VTVattr=ALLmount* as described in “GLOBAL Statement” on page 13, and
- The VTV is either resident in or can be recalled to an online VTSS.

### Examples

To mount a scratch VTV on the VTD at device address 8900 and assign Management Class *VSMLOCAL*, enter:

**M SCRATCH 8900 MGMT(VSMLOCAL)**

# MVCPool Control Statement

The MVCPool control statement defines your system’s MVC pool and, optionally, Named MVC Pools within that pool.

## Syntax

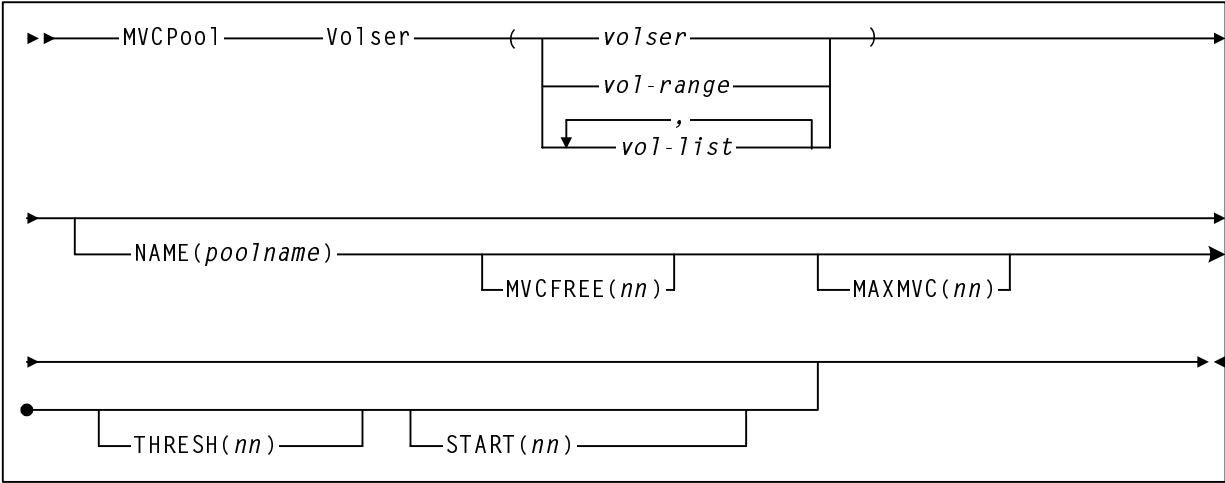


Figure 128.MVCPool Control Statement Syntax

## Parameters

- Volser**  
defines the MVCs.
- volser, vol-range, or vol-list*  
the volsers of one or more MVCs. If you specify multiple volume ranges, do not overlap them.
- NAME**  
defines a Named MVC Pool. If you do not specify the MVCPool NAME parameter, VTCS does not create a Named MVC Subpool and assigns the specified volumes to the default pool (DEFAULTPOOL). You cannot create Named MVC Pools with the reserved names DEFAULTPOOL and ALL.
- poolname*  
the MVC Pool name (up to 13 characters).



**Note:** You can use the optional MVCFREE, MAXMVC, THRESH, and START parameters to specify values for the Named MVC Pool that override the global values specified on CONFIG.



**MVCFREE(*nnn*)**

specifies the minimum number of free MVCs in the MVC pool. A free MVC has 100% usable space and does not contain any migrated VTVs. Valid values are 0 to 255. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

If free MVCs is equal or less than this value, VTCS issues message SLS6616I and starts an automatic space reclamation.



**Note:** If you set MVCFREE=0, VTCS actually uses the default value (40).

**MAXMVC(*nn*)**

specifies the maximum number of MVCs that will be processed in a single space reclamation run. Valid values are 1 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

For automatic space reclamation to start, the number of eligible MVCs (determined by the THRESH parameter) must also exceed the MAXMVC value.

**THRESH(*nn*)**

specifies the percentage of fragmented space that makes an MVC eligible for demand or automatic reclamation. Valid values are 4 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

**START(*nn*)**

specifies the level at which automatic space reclamation starts for each ACS (not globally for all ACSs) or, if specified, for a Named MVC Pool. Specify a percentage value, which is equal to:

$$(MVCs \text{ eligible for reclamation} / Total \text{ available MVCs}) * 100$$

Where:

*MVCs eligible for reclamation*

is the number of eligible MVCs determined by the THRESHLD parameter.

*Total available MVCs*

equals the number of eligible MVCs *plus* the number of free MVCs. A free MVC has 100% usable space and does not contain any migrated VTVs.

Valid values are 1 to 98. There is no default; if not specified, the CONFIG RECLAIM value (or default) is used.

## Usage

Use the `MVCPool` control statement to define your system's MVC pool.

You use the `VT MVCDEF` command on page 88 to load the `MVCPool` control statements. For more information about using the `VT MVCDEF` command and the `MVCPool` statement.

You can use the `NAME` parameter to define a Named MVC Pool. You can use the optional `MVCFREE`, `MAXMVC`, `THRESH`, and `START` parameters to specify values for the Named MVC Pool that override the global values specified on `CONFIG`.

## Example

The following `MVCPool` statement defines volsers 900000 - 909999 as MVCs:

```
MVCP V(900000 - 909999)
```

# STORCLAS Control Statement

The STORclas control statement defines a VSM Storage Class.



**Note:** The STORclas control statement is valid only if FEATures VSM(ADVMTGT) is specified; for more information, see “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168.

## Syntax

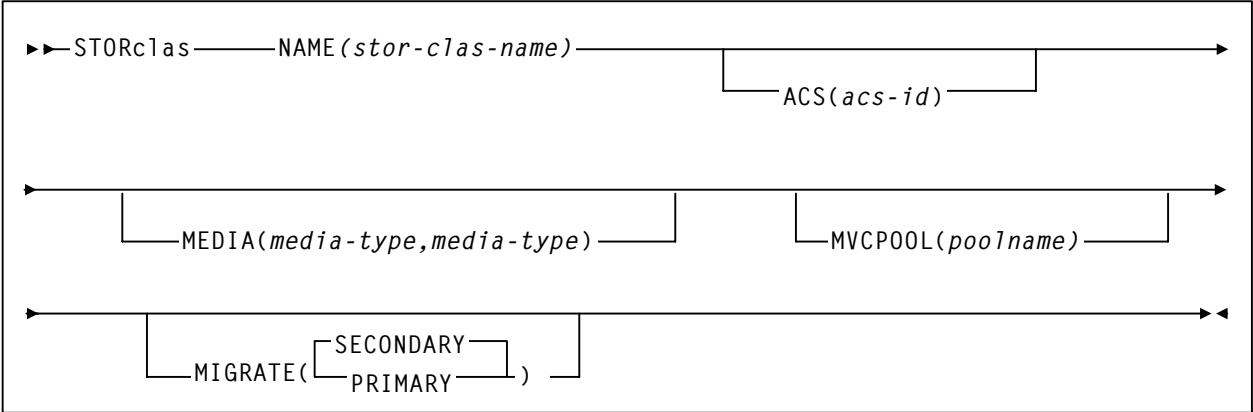


Figure 129. STORclas Control Statement Syntax

## Parameters

- NAME**  
specifies the name of the Storage Class.  
*stor-clas-name*  
the Storage Class name. This name must be 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters beginning with an alpha character and must follow SMS naming conventions.
- ACS**  
specifies the ACSs from which RTDs and MVCs are selected.  
*acs-id*  
Species the ACS ID. An ACS ID has a hexadecimal value from 00 through FE.
- MEDIA**  
specifies a preference list of MVC media types. This list supersedes the default media selection list.  
For migration and consolidation, VSM attempts to select MVC media in the specified order. For reclamation, VTVs are read from MVCs in the specified order, and written back to MVCs in the reverse of the specified order.  
*media-type*  
Species a media type.

**MVCP00L**

specifies the Named MVC Pool from which volumes are selected. If you do not specify an MVC Pool name, the volumes are selected from the default pool (DEFAULTP00L).

*poolName*

the name of an MVC Pool that you defined on the MVCPool control statement; for more information, see “MVCP00L Control Statement” on page 188.

**MIGRATE**

for Management Classes with REPLICAT(YES) that reference this Storage Class, specifies the source VTSS for VTV migration.

**SECONDARY**

Secondary VTSS (the default).

**PRIMARY**

Primary VTSS.

**Usage**

Use the STORclas control statement to define a VSM Storage Class. The STORclas control statement is only valid if FEATURES VSM(ADVMMGT) is specified; for more information, see “FEATURES Control Statement” on page 168. You can define a Storage Class for the Named MVC Pool specified on the MVCP00L parameter.

The MGMTclas control statement can specify a Storage Class on the MIGpool, CONSRC, and CONTGT parameters. For more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177. You use the MGMTDEF command to load MGMTclas and STORclas control statements, which must reside in the same data set for cross-validation; for more information, see “MGMTDEF Command” on page 185.

Storage Classes are never mixed on the same MVC. If you do not specify a Storage Class on the MGMTclas statement, the Storage Class defaults to the VTSS name.



**Caution:** Note the following when using Named MVC pools:

- If you specify the MVCP00L parameter, ensure that specified Named MVC Pool exists. Otherwise, the Storage Class is invalid, and VTCS reverts to the default Storage Class (the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration) and a ‘no MVCs available’ condition will occur. Either correctly define the Named MVC Pool or add Storage Class definitions for all VTSSs and associated them with the appropriate Named MVC pool(s).
- If you specify the MEDIA and MVCP00L parameters, ensure that the Named MVC Pool contains MVCs of the specified media type(s); otherwise, a ‘no MVCs available’ condition will occur.



**Note:** If you do not explicitly assign a Storage Class, an MVC's default Storage Class is the name of the last VTSS that wrote to the MVC for reclamation or migration and this class has the VTCS default media selections. To change these defaults, create a Storage Class with the VTSS name and specify the desired media selection order.



**Caution:** You cannot use the default Storage Class to group or segregate workloads.

For more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177

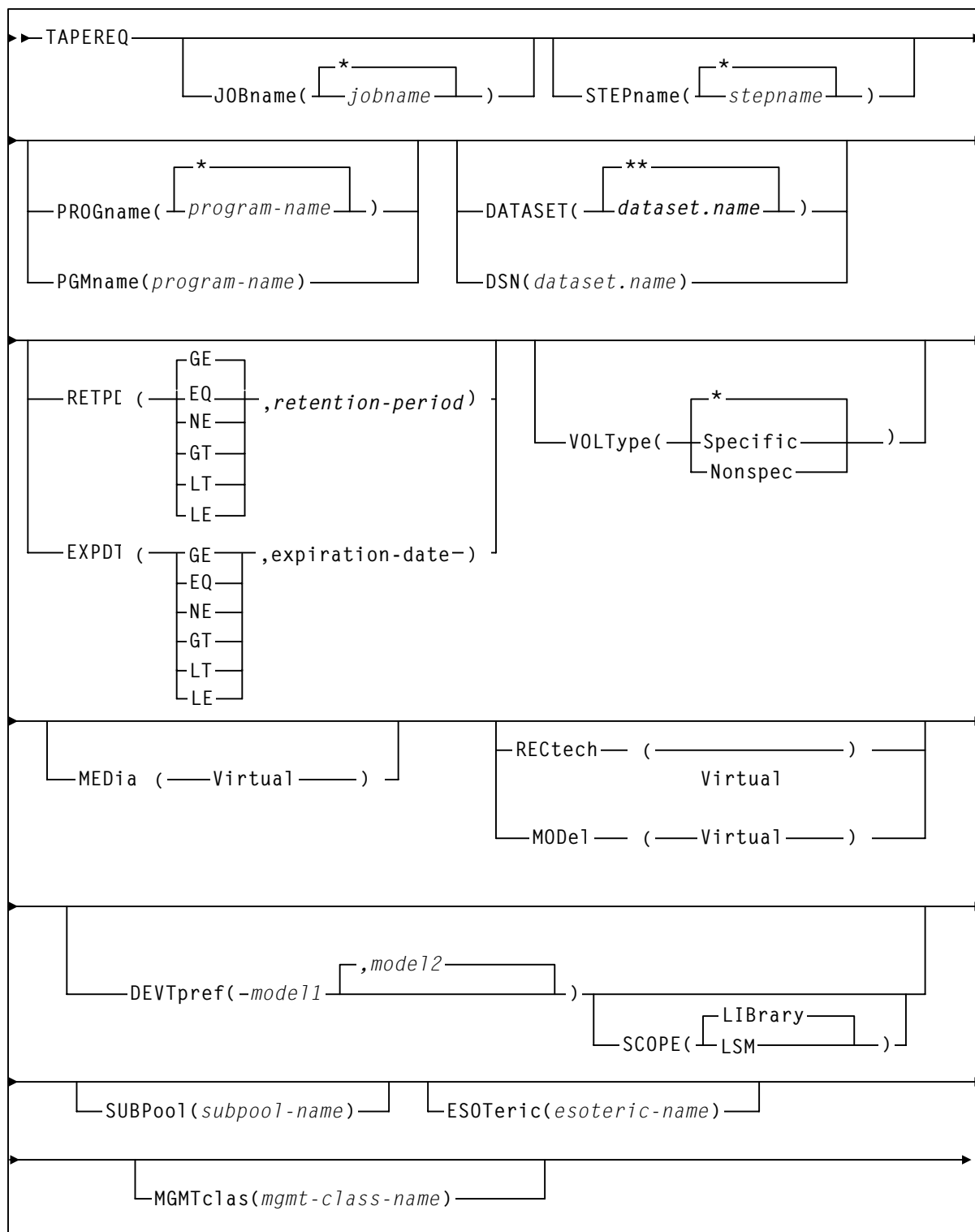
## Examples

See *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide*.

## **TAPEREQ Control Statement for HSC**

The enhanced HSC TAPEREQ control statement can route tape data sets to VSM and pass a Management Class to VSM.

## Syntax



**Figure 130. TAPEREQ Control Statement Syntax**

## Parameters

### Unchanged TAPEREQ Parameters

The following TAPEREQ parameters are unchanged but apply to VSM. Figure 130. on page 195 shows valid values for these parameters; see Chapter 3, “Control Statements and Start Procedure” in *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS* for more information.

- JOBname
- STEPname
- PROGram
- PGMname
- DATASET
- DSN
- RETPD
- EXPDT
- VOLType
- DEVTpref
- SCOPE

### New or Enhanced TAPEREQ Parameters for VSM and HSC

The following TAPEREQ parameters apply to both VSM and HSC without VSM installed.

#### SUBPool

specifies the scratch subpool that contains volumes used to satisfy nonspecific requests. For more information about scratch subpool management, see Chapter 2, “Host Software Component Functions” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.

*poolname*

the subpool name.

#### ESOTeric

specifies the esoteric that defines the list of eligible transports to be used to satisfy a tape request.

To route a data set to a VTD, specify one of the esoteric names that you defined during configuration. For VSM, esoteric definition and substitution is different in JES2 and JES3. For more information on creating and using VSM esoterics for TAPEREQ statements, see *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide*.

For more information on using esoteric substitution to route a data set to Nearline transports that are *not* RTDs, see Chapter 9, “User Exits” in *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.

*esoteric-name*

the esoteric name.



## TAPEREQ Parameters for VSM

The `MEDIA`, `RECTECH`, and `MODEL` parameters have a value of `Virtual` for VSM only. Specifying `Virtual` on any of these three parameters will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD. `Virtual` does not apply to HSC without VSM installed. The `MGMTCLAS` parameter does not apply to HSC without VSM installed.



**Caution:** If you specify a Management Class on the `MGMTCLAS` parameter, you must specify both `MEDIA(V)` and `RECTECH(V)`.

`MEDIA`

specifies the volume media.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.

`RECTECH`

specifies the recording technique.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.

`MODEL`

specifies the transport model.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.

`MGMTCLAS`

specifies a Management Class you defined on the `MGMTCLAS` control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name.



**Note:** HSC does not support the `DUPLEX` parameter on `TAPEREQ` statements, only on `MGMTCLAS` statements. For more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

## Usage

To route data sets to VSM with TAPEREQ statements, do one of the following:

- Specify `Virtual` on the `MEDIA`, `MODEL`, or `RECTECH` parameter. If you specify `Virtual`, VSM selects an available VTD in your system and routes the data set to that VTD.

In a multi-VTSS environment, therefore, specifying `Virtual` does *not* direct the VTD allocation to a specific VTSS, but lets the allocation occur in any VTSS in the configuration.

- Specify an esoteric that represents VTDs on the `ESOTERIC` parameter.

For VSM, esoteric definition and substitution is different in JES2 and JES3. For more information on creating and using VSM esoterics for TAPEREQ statements, see *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide*.

You can also specify a Management Class on the `MGMTCLAS` parameter. You define Management Classes with the `MGMTCLAS` statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177. You use the `MGMTDEF` command to load `MGMTCLAS` statements from a specified definition data set; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.



**Note:** If you specify a Management Class on a TAPEREQ statement and an SMS routine, the Management Class on the SMS routine takes precedence.

You must use the `TREQDEF` command to load TAPEREQ control statements from a specified definition data set; see Chapter 3, “Control Statements and Start Procedure” in *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS* for more information.



**Note:** Multiple TAPEREQ statements that specify the same or overlapping selection criteria (such as jobname, stepname, or data set) can cause undesirable results (such as assignment of `MEDIA Virtual` and an esoteric). For example:

```
TAPEREQ DSN(AA22*.* ) MEDIA(V) RECT(V)
TAPEREQ DSN(**) MEDIA(LONGITUD) RECT(36) ESOT(ACS0)
```

In this case, because the second TAPEREQ statement is a “catchall” statement with a wildcard for *any* data set, HSC will actually attempt to assign real media and esoteric ACS0 to any data set that meets the data set mask of AA22\*.\* instead of routing it to VSM. Let’s say that what you really want is to route all data sets selected by mask of AA22\*.\* to VSM, but you want to route all data sets selected by a mask of PROD17.\* to 36-track tape in ACS0 (represented by esoteric ACS0). To do this, delete the catchall TAPEREQ statement and instead code the following:

```
TAPEREQ DSN(AA22*.* ) MEDIA(V) RECT(V)
TAPEREQ DSN(PROD17.* ) MEDIA(LONGITUD) RECT(36) ESOT(ACS0)
```

## Examples

To route all data sets with the HLQ of PAYROLL to a VTV mounted on a VTD that VSM selects, create the following TAPEREQ statement:

```
TAPEREQ DSN(PAYROLL.**) MED(VIRTUAL) RECT(VIRTUAL)
```

To route all data sets with the HLQ of PAYROLL to a VTV mounted on one of the VTDs represented by the VTSS1 esoteric, create the following TAPEREQ statement:

```
TAPEREQ DSN(PAYROLL.**) ESOT(ES0VTSS1)
```

To route volumes created by jobs with jobname PRODSL2 to a VTV mounted on a VTD that VSM selects and specify Management Class MGMTCLS1:

```
TAPEREQ JOB(PRODSL1) RECT(VIRTUAL) MGMT(MGMTCLS1)
```

## UNITATTR Control Statement

For VSM, the enhanced HSC UNITATTR control statement specifies VTD attributes, including unit address, model type (virtual), and VTSS with which it is associated.

### Syntax

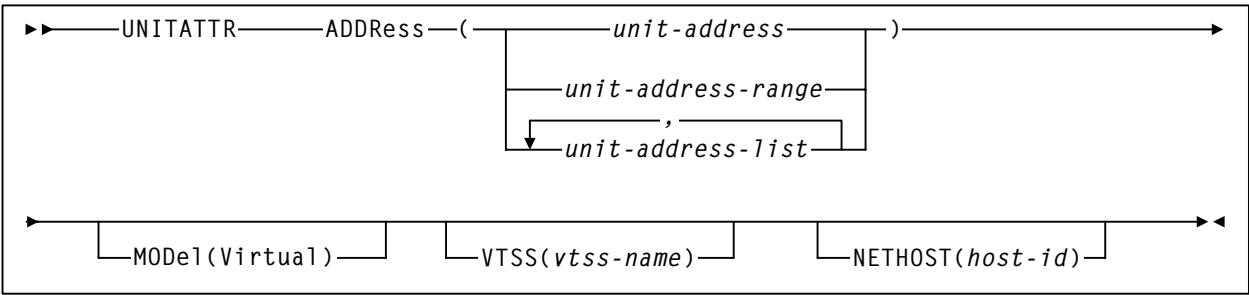


Figure 131.UNITATTR Control Statement Syntax

### Parameters



**Note:** As described in “Usage” on page 201, VSM requires UNITATTR statements for both VTDs and RTDs.

#### Unchanged UNITATTR Parameters

The following UNITATTR parameters are unchanged but apply to VSM. Figure 131 shows valid values for these parameters; see Chapter 3, “Control Statements and Start Procedure” in *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS* for more information.

- ADDRESS
- NETHOST

#### UNITATTR Parameters Enhanced for VSM

The MODEL parameter has a new required value of Virtual for VSM VTDs only. Virtual does *not* apply to HSC without VSM installed.

##### MODEL

specifies the transport model.

##### Virtual

specifies that the unit addresses specified on the ADDRESS parameter are for virtual drives.

## UNITATTR Parameters for VSM

The following VTSS parameter applies to VSM only, not HSC without VSM installed.

VTSS

specifies the VTSS with which the VTDs are associated.

*vtss-name*

the VTSS identifier.

## Usage

For each VTSS in your VSM configuration, use the HSC UNITATTR control statement to specify VTD attributes, including unit address, model type (*Virtual*), and VTSS with which it is associated.



RTDs, which are Nearline transports, also require UNITATTR statements and LIBGEN definitions.

## Example

To define VTDs with unit addresses of D000–D03F and associate them with VTSS VTSS01, create the following UNITATTR control statement:

```
UNITATTR ADD(D000-D03F) MOD(virtual) VTSS(vtss01)
```

To define VTDs with unit addresses of D000–D03F and associate them with VTSS VTSS01 and VTDs with unit addresses of E000–E03F and associate them with VTSS VTSS02, create the following UNITATTR control statements:

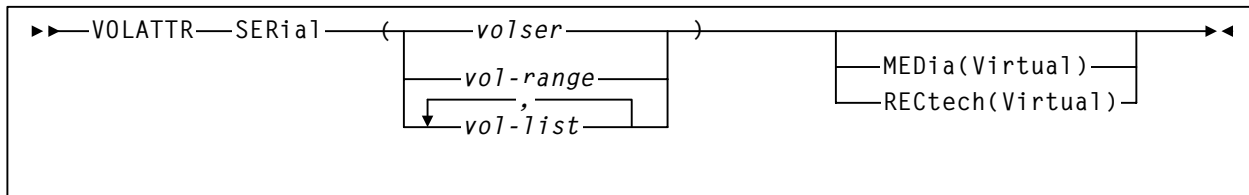
```
UNITATTR ADD(D000-D03F) MOD(virtual) VTSS(vtss01)
```

```
UNITATTR ADD(E000-E03F) MOD(virtual) VTSS(vtss02)
```

## VOLATTR Control Statement

For VSM, the enhanced HSC VOLATTR control statement specifies VTV attributes, including the volser and media type (virtual).

### Syntax



**Figure 132.** VOLATTR Control Statement Syntax

### Parameters

#### Unchanged VOLATTR Parameters

The SERIAL VOLATTR parameter is unchanged but applies to VSM. Figure 1 shows valid values for this parameter; see Chapter 3, “Control Statements and Start Procedure” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS* for more information.



**Hint:** When you create VOLATTR statements for VTVs, you use the SERIAL parameter to specify the VTV volsers.



**Caution:** On VOLATTR statements for VTVs, do *not* specify duplicate volsers or overlapping volder ranges.

In addition, after you define an initial set of VTV volsers, you can add more volsers but you should not change your initial set of VTV volsers, which wastes HSC CDS space. For example, if you initially define VTVs V00000 - V99999, you can later add VTVs W00000 - W99999 by specifying both volder ranges when you update the VOLATTR statement that specifies your system’s VTVs. If you update the VOLATTR statement to change the volder range from V00000 - V99999 to W00000 - W99999, hosts can still access the original range (V00000 - V99999). If a host scratches a VTV in the original range, however, the VTV cannot be reused, but continues to take up space in the CDS.

## VOLATTR Parameters Enhanced for VSM

The following VOLATTR parameters have a new *required* value of `Virtual` for VTVs only. `Virtual` does *not* apply to physical HSC volumes.

`MEDIA`

specifies the volume media.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route data sets to a VTV mounted on a VTD.

`RECtech`

specifies the recording technique.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.



**Note:** To define a volume as virtual, you must specify the `Virtual` keyword for either the `MEDIA` or `RECtech`. You can also specify both `MEDIA` or `RECtech`; the keyword must be `Virtual` for both parameters to define the volume as virtual.

## Usage

For VSM, use the enhanced HSC VOLATTR control statement to specify VTV attributes, including the volser and media type (virtual).

You must use the VOLDEF command to load VOLATTR control statements from a specified definition data set; see Chapter 3, “Control Statements and Start Procedure” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS* for more information.

## Example

To define VTVs to be all volumes whose volsers begin with VT, create the following VOLATTR statement:

```
VOLATTR SERIAL(VT*) MEDIA(Virtual)
```

## HSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements

The MOUNT, QDRLIST, and SELSCR requests support an additional value of VIRTUAL (to specify a VTV) for the MEDIA and RECtech parameters.



For these requests for VSM:

- For scratch requests, within a VTSS, VSM selects the first available VTD with the lowest device address.

In a multi-VTSS system, VSM will determine which VTSS is optimal for the request, then select the first available VTD with the lowest device address in that VTSS. For a given request, VSM limits VTD selection to the first 8 VTSSs, but will select from all VTSSs for a series of requests.

- For specific requests, depending on the level of VTCS, VSM will either return a list of all VTDs or preferred VTDs.
- The SCRPOOL parameter is invalid; specify SUBPOOL instead.
- The MOUNT request supports an additional parameter of MGMTCLAS that can assign a VSM Management Class to the VTV.

The volume information element returned for a QVOLUME request or a MOUNT request for a virtual volume includes a value of VIRTUAL for media type (SLXVMED) and an x'01' for volume status (SLXVSTA).

For more information on these requests, see Appendix E, “Programmatic Interface” of the *HSC System Programmer's Guide for MVS*.

## HSC ALLOC Command Enhancements

As described in *HSC Operator's Guide for MVS*, the ALLOC command sets or changes HSC device allocation options.

In the JES2 environment, regardless of the value you specify, the DEFER parameter is always set to ON for VTVs. That is, for VTVs, deferred mount processing is enabled, which overrides the mount processing specified in the user's JCL. The VTV mount is deferred until the JCL job step opens a data set on the VTV. This value helps minimize VTV recalls. If a data set resides on a migrated VTV, VSM does not recall the VTV until the job actually opens the data set on the VTV.

In the JES3 environment, regardless of the value you specify, the DEFER parameter is always set to JES3 for VTVs, which causes all mounts to be JES3 deferred. A volume is not mounted until a step begins execution.

Note that if a unit affinity chain includes a mixture of incompatible drives (including VTDs), NCS SMC device exclusion always ensures that the chain will be broken.



## HSC User Exit Enhancements

Use return code UX02VIRT (32) in register 15 in HSC User Exit SLSUX02 (JES2) or for SLSUX04 (JES3) use UX04VIRT (24), which you use to control transport allocation for scratch mounts. To satisfy a scratch mount request, return code UX0xVIRT causes VSM to select an available VTD in your system and routes the job to a VTV mounted on that VTD.

For more information about HSC User Exits, see Chapter 9, “User Exits” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.

## HSC Batch API Enhancements

The HSC Batch API supports bulk reading of CDS VTV and MVC records. For more information about the Batch API, see Appendix F, “Batch Application Interface (API)” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.



**Hint:** Appendix F, “Batch Application Interface (API)” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS* provides an example of a QCDS request that retrieves VTV records.

For more information about the HSC Batch API enhancements for VSM, see the following sections:

- “Batch API Mapping Macros” on page 206
- “SLSUREQ QCDS Request” on page 210
- “Library Element Mapping” on page 210

The HSC Batch API provides additional data in the following records returning from a Batch API Query CDS request:

- The VTV record now provides the compressed and uncompressed size of the VTV. For more information, see “SLUVTDAT Macro Record Format” on page 208.
- The MVC record now provides an MVC status indicator. For more information, see “SLUVMDAT Macro Record Format” on page 206.

## Batch API Mapping Macros

The following sections described the macros to support VSM:

- “SLUVM DAT Macro Record Format”
- “SLUVTDAT Macro Record Format” on page 208

## SLUVM DAT Macro Record Format

Table 16 describes the SLUVM DAT macro record format.

<b>Table 16. SLUVM DAT Macro Record Format</b>					
<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Length</b>	<b>Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
SLUVM DAT - FLAT FILE MVC DATA DSECT					
FUNCTION: DESCRIBES THE MVC DATA WHICH IS GENERATED TO THE FLAT FILE BY THE BATCH API					
0	(0)	STRUCTURE		MDREC	FLAT FILE RECORD
0	(0)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECRDW	RECORD DESCRIPTOR WORD
4	(4)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECL	LENGTH
8	(8)	CHARACTER	1	MDRECC	CHARACTER EBCDIC/ASCII
9	(9)	CHARACTER	1	MDRECT	TYPE M - MVC
10	(A)	CHARACTER	6	MDRECM	MVC VOLSER
16	(10)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECV	VTV COUNT
20	(14)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECPU	PERCENT USED
24	(18)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECPA	PERCENT AVAILABLE
28	(1C)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECPW	PERCENT WASTED
32	(20)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECMC	MOUNTED COUNT
36	(24)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECTL	TIME LAST USED HIGH ORDER WORD FROM STACK INSTRUCTION
40	(28)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	MDRECMS	MEDIA SIZE
44	(2C)	LENGTH		MDRECLN	LENGTH OF RECORD WHEN USING VERSIONS 1 AND 2 OF SLSUREQM
44	(2C)	BITSTRING	1	MDRECERR	MVC STATUS INDICATOR
		X'80'		MDINITD	MVC INITIALIZED FROM A MIGRATE
		X'40'		MDMOUNT	MVC IS MOUNTED ON AN RTD
		X'20'		MDBROKE	MVC HAS AN ERROR

**Table 16. SLUVMDAT Macro Record Format**

<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Length</b>	<b>Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
		X'10'		MDFULL	MVC CANNOT CONTAIN ANY MORE VTVS
		X'08'		MDDRAIN	MVC IS BEING DRAINED
		X'04'		MDLOST	MVC IS LOST (LAST MOUNT TIMED OUT)
		X'02'		MDDATCK	MVC SWAPPED (NOT IN RECOVERY)
		X'01'		MDREADO	MVC IS READONLY
45	(2D)	RESERVED	3		
48	(30)	LENGTH		MDRECLN3	LENGTH OF RECORD LENGTH OF RECORD WHEN USING VERSIONS 3 OF SLSUREQM

SLUVTDAT Macro  
Record Format

Table 17 describes the SLUVTDAT macro record format.

<b>Table 17. SLUVTDAT Macro Record Format</b>					
<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Length</b>	<b>Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
SLUVMTDAT - FLAT FILE VTV DATA DSECT					
FUNCTION: DESCRIBES THE VTV DATA WHICH IS GENERATED TO THE FLAT FILE BY THE BATCH API					
0	(0)	STRUCTURE		VDREC	FLAT FILE RECORD
0	(0)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDRECRDW	RECORD DESCRIPTOR WORD
4	(4)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDRECL	LENGTH
8	(8)	CHARACTER	1	VDRECC	CHARACTER EBCDIC/ASCII
9	(9)	CHARACTER	1	VDRECT	TYPE V - VTV
10	(A)	CHARACTER	6	VDRECV	VTV VOLSER
16	(10)	CHARACTER	8	VDRECVT	VTSS
24	(18)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDRECSZ	SIZE (MB)
28	(1C)	CHARACTER	1	VDRECM	MIGRATED Y/N
29	(1D)	CHARACTER	1	VDRECD	DUPLEX Y/N
30	(1E)	CHARACTER	6	VDRECM1	MVC VOLSER OF FIRST/ONLY COPY
36	(24)	CHARACTER	6	VDRECM2	MVC VOLSER OF SECOND COPY
42	(2A)	CHARACTER	1	VDRECI	INVALID Y/N
43	(2B)	CHARACTER	1	VDRECS	SCRATCH Y/N
44	(2C)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDRECTC	HIGH ORDER WORD OF TOD CLOCK (GMT) RETURNED BY STCK INSTRUCTION
48	(30)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDRECTL	HIGH ORDER WORD OF TOD CLOCK (GMT) RETURNED BY STCK INSTRUCTION
52	(34)	CHARACTER	8	VDRECMC	MANAGEMENT CLASS
60	(3C)	LENGTH		VDRECLN	LENGTH OF RECORD WHEN USING SLSUREQM VERSIONS 1 AND 2
60	(3C)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDUCMPSZ	VTV UNCOMPRESSED SIZE (BYTES)
64	(40)	SIGNED-FWORD	4	VDCOMPSZ	VTV COMPRESSED SIZE (BYTES)
68	(44)	CHARACTER	6		RESERVED

**Table 17. SLUVTDAT Macro Record Format**

<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Type</b>	<b>Length</b>	<b>Label</b>	<b>Description</b>
74	(4A)	CHARACTER	6		RESERVED
80	(50)	LENGTH		VDRECLN	LENGTH OF RECORD WHEN USING SLSUREQM VERSION 3

## SLSUREQ QCDS Request

The following TYPE= values are valid on the SLSUREQ QCDS request:

MVC

specifies the VTCS MVC record area of the CDS.

VTV

specifies the VTCS VTV record area of the CDS.

## Library Element Mapping

Table 18 describes the Library Element Record Mapping additions.

***Table 18. Library Element Record Mapping Additions***

Request	Records Returned
READ MVC	VTCS MVC records mapped by the SLUVMDAT macro
READ VTV	VTV records mapped by the SLUVTDAT macro

## HSC Operator Command Enhancements

With HSC:

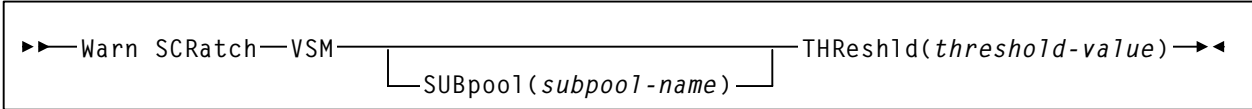
- You can dynamically reload SCRP00L statements via the SCRDEF command. For more information, see “Scratch Subpool Definition (SCRDEF) Command and Control Statement” in Chapter 3, “HSC Control Statements and HSC Start Procedure” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.
- The Warn SCRatch, Display SCRatch, and Display THReshld commands are enhanced to let you manage and monitor scratch VTVs. For more information, see:
  - “HSC WARN SCRATCH Command Enhancements” on page 212
  - “HSC DISPLAY THRESHLD Command Enhancements” on page 213
  - “HSC DISPLAY SCRATCH Command Enhancements” on page 215
- You can expand the CDS using the CDS EXPAND command.
- You can use the TRACELKP command to trace HSC definition data sets, including the following:
  - TAPEREQ
  - VOLATTR
  - LMUPDEF
  - UNITATTR
  - MVCP00L
  - MGMTCLAS
  - STORCLAS

For more information, see Chapter 2, “Commands, Control Statements, and Utilities,” in *HSC Operator’s Guide for MVS*.

**HSC WARN  
SCRATCH  
Command  
Enhancements**

For VSM, the enhanced HSC Warn SCRatch command sets scratch warning thresholds for HSC subpools that contain VTVs.

Syntax



**Figure 133.** Warn SCRatch VSM **Command Syntax**

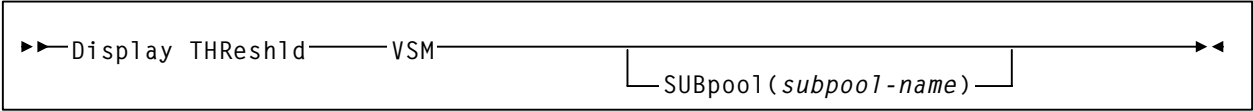
Parameters	<p>VSM</p> <p>Specifies that the command applies to VTVs only.</p> <p>SUBpool</p> <p>Specifies an HSC subpool that contains VTVs. If not specified, the command applies to the total VSM scratch count.</p> <p><i>subpool-name</i></p> <p>The specified subpool.</p> <p>THReshd</p> <p>Specifies the scratch warning threshold. If the number of scratches goes below the specified threshold, HSC issues a warning message. Valid values are 0 to 9999.</p> <p><i>threshold-value</i></p> <p>The specified threshold.</p>
Usage	<p>Use Warn SCRatch to set scratch warning thresholds for HSC subpools that contain VTVs.</p>
Example	<p>To set a threshold of 50 VTVs for subpool VIRT01, enter the following:</p> <p><b>W SCR VSM SUB(VIRT01) THR(50)</b></p>



**HSC DISPLAY  
THRESHLD  
Command  
Enhancements**

For VSM, the enhanced HSC Display THReshld command displays scratch thresholds for HSC subpools that contain VTVs.

Syntax



**Figure 134.**Display THReshld VSM **Command Syntax**

Parameters	VSM
	Specifies that the command applies to VTVs only.
	SUBpool
	Specifies an HSC subpool that contains VTVs. If not specified, the command applies to the total VSM scratch count.
	<i>subpool-name</i>
	The specified subpool.
Usage	Use Display THReshld to display scratch thresholds for HSC subpools that contain VTVs.
Example	To display the scratch threshold for subpool VIRT01, enter the following: <b>D THR VSM SUB(VIRT01)</b>

## Output

Figure 137 shows an example of HSC Display THR VSM output.

ACS/LSM	SUBPOOL	NAME	MEDIA	RECTECH	COUNT	THRESH
VSM	SUBPOOL	VIRT01	TOTAL		20	10
VSM	SUBPOOL	VIRT02	TOTAL		20	10
VSM	NON-SUBPOOL		TOTAL		60	50
VSM	TOTAL				100	100

**Figure 135. Example output from HSC Display THR VSM**



**Note:** VSM information is displayed if:

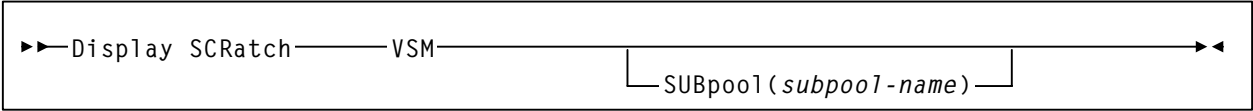
- You explicitly specify Display THReshld VSM.
- You specify Display THReshld (no keywords) and VSM is active.

When there are no subpools defined for VSM, the VSM summary includes only the “Non-Subpool” and “Total” lines. If VSM is not active when an explicit request is made for VSM thresholds, the will indicates “Nothing to Display”.

**HSC DISPLAY  
SCRATCH  
Command  
Enhancements**

For VSM, the enhanced HSC Display SCRatch command displays scratch counts for HSC subpools that contain VTVs.

Syntax



**Figure 136.** Warn SCRatch VSM **Command Syntax**

Parameters	<div>VSM Specifies that the command applies to VTVs only.</div> <div>SUBpool Specifies an HSC subpool that contains VTVs. If not specified, the command applies to the total VSM scratch count. <i>subpool-name</i> The specified subpool.</div>
Usage	<div>Use Display SCRatch to display scratch counts for HSC subpools that contain VTVs. Scratch counts are reported as follows:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Scratch counts are reported for all subpools that have a warning threshold set, even if the scratch count is zero.</li><li>• If a calculation of the “non-subpool” count results in a negative number, a count of zero is displayed.</li></ul></div>
Example	<div>To display the scratch count for subpool VIRT01, enter the following:</div> <div><b>D SCR VSM SUB(VIRT01)</b></div>

## Output

Figure 137 shows an example of HSC Display SCR VSM output.

ACS/LSM	SUBPOOL	NAME	MEDIA	RECTECH	COUNT
VSM	SUBPOOL	VIRT01	TOTAL		20
VSM	SUBPOOL	VIRT02	TOTAL		20
VSM	NON-SUBPOOL		TOTAL		60
VSM	TOTAL				100

**Figure 137.** Example output from HSC Display SCR VSM



**Note:** VSM information is displayed if:

- You explicitly specify Display SCRatch VSM.
- You specify Display SCRatch (no keywords) and VSM is active.

When there are no subpools defined for VSM, the VSM summary includes only the “Non-Subpool” and “Total” lines. If VSM is not active when an explicit request is made for VSM scratch counts, the will indicates “Nothing to Display”.

## HSC DELDISP Parameter Enhancements

HSC provides two new settings for the LIBGEN DELDISP parameter of the SLILIBRY macro:

### ASCRTCH

(All scratch). Both real tape volumes and VTVs are made scratch if they were mounted scratch and the disposition on the dismount message is delete ('D').

### VSCRTCH

(Virtual scratch). Only VTVs are made scratch if they were mounted scratch and the delete disposition on the dismount message is delete ('D').

The current DELDISP settings (SCRTCH and NOSCRTCH) define scratch handling at dismount **only** for real volumes. If DELDISP is set to either of these values, VTVs are **never** scratched at dismount.

On pre-5.0 HSC systems, acting against a CDS where the DELDISP is set to ASCRTCH, the setting is handled as SCRTCH. Similarly, if the DELDISP has been set to VSCRTCH, the setting is handled as NOSCRTCH.



**Note:** A LIBGEN and MERGECDs or RECONFIG utility is not required to change the DELDISP setting in an existing system. The DELDISP setting can be changed with the HSC SET utility; it now accepts the two new settings. Active systems must be recycled to affect the change for DELDISP. Once set, the DELDISP setting is persistent across HSC initializations.



## Chapter 3. LibraryStation Enhancements and Additions for VSM

---

This chapter contains reference information about the following enhancements and additions to LibraryStation to support VSM:

- “SPNUM Statement” on page 220, a new LibraryStation LSDEF file statement that defines a LibraryStation subpool that corresponds to an HSC subpool.
- “VIRTACS Statement” on page 223, a new LibraryStation LSDEF file statement that defines a virtual ACS that maps to a VTSS to let clients connect to VSM.
- “SLGDIAG VIRTUAL\_DRIVE Parameter” on page 224, which you can use to verify VSM and HSC operation with LibraryStation in the same SLGDIAG job.

# SPNUM Statement

The enhanced SPNUM statement, which defines a LibraryStation subpool that corresponds to an HSC subpool, lets non-MVS/CSC clients request VTV mounts and pass a Management Class to VSM.

## Syntax

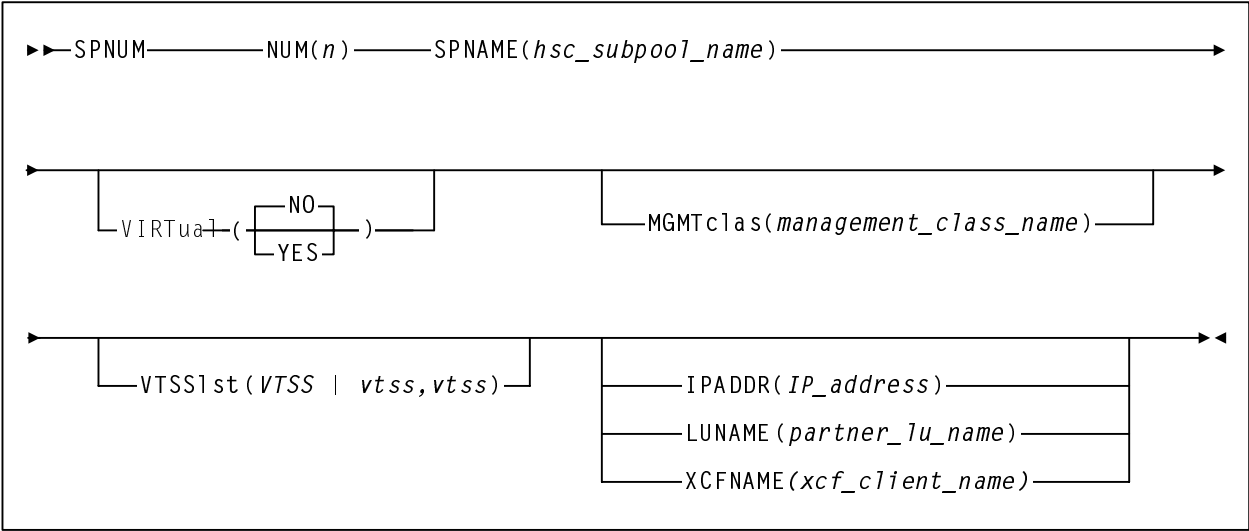


Figure 138. SPNUM Statement Syntax

## Parameters

### Unchanged SPNUM Parameters

The following SPNUM parameters are unchanged but apply to VSM. Figure 138 shows valid values for these parameters; see Chapter 10, “Configuring the LSDEF Data Set” of *LibraryStation Configuration Guide* for more information.

- NUM
- SPNAME
- IPADDR
- LUNAME
- XCFNAME



## New SPNUM Parameters

The following new SPNUM parameters apply to LibraryStation in VSM environments. These parameters allow non-MVS/CSC clients to request VTV mounts.

### VIRTUAL

specifies whether the subpool contains VTVs.

#### NO

the subpool does not contain VTVs (the default).

#### YES

the subpool contains VTVs.

### MGMTclas

specifies the name of a Management Class you defined on the HSC MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name.

### VTSS

specifies one or two VTSSs used to satisfy the mount request.

*vtssname | vtssname, vtssname*

the names of one or two VTSSs.



**Note:** Each VTSS name must correspond to a VTSS name specified on a VIRTACS statement; for more information, see “VIRTACS Statement” on page 223.

## Usage

Use the enhanced SPNUM statement to define a LibraryStation VTV subpool that corresponds to an HSC subpool. This subpool lets non-MVS/CSC clients request VTV mounts and pass a Management Class to VSM. You can also use the VTSSLST parameter to specify one or two VTSSs used to satisfy the mount request. You use the LibraryStation VIRTACS statement to define a virtual ACS that maps to a VTSS to let clients connect to VSM; for more information, see “VIRTACS Statement” on page 223.



**Note:** LibraryStation subpools can contain mixtures of VTVs and real Nearline volumes. If your client allows it, however, to simplify volume management, StorageTek recommends that you define subpools that contain only VTVs or real Nearline volumes, not mixtures of them.

You specify a Management Class on the MGMTclas parameter to pass this Management Class to VSM for each VTV mount. You define Management Classes with the MGMTclas statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177. You use the MGMTDEF command to load MGMTclas statements from a specified definition data set (which resides on the HSC/LibraryStation server); for more information, see “MGMTDEF Command” on page 185.

## Examples

For example, create the following SPNUM statement to:

- Define VTV subpool 7 that corresponds to HSC subpool LSVIRT1
- Pass Management Class MGMTCLS7 to VSM when a VTV is mounted
- Specify VTSSs VTSS01 and VTSS02 are used to satisfy VTV mounts
- Restrict VTV mount requests to the client at IP address 129.80.57.16

```
SPNUM NUM(07) SPNAME(LSVIRT1) VIRT(YES) MGMT(MGMTCLS7)  
VTSSL(VTSS01,VTSS02) IPADDR(129.80.57.16)
```

VIRTACS Statement

The VIRTACS statement defines a virtual ACS that maps to a VTSS to let clients connect to VSM.

Syntax

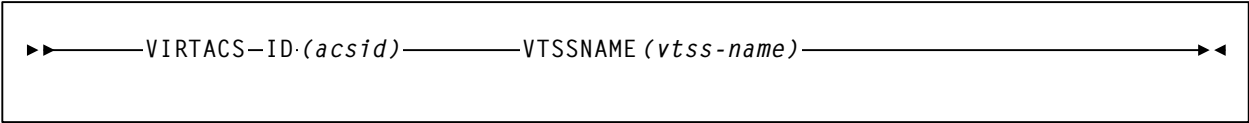


Figure 139.VIRTACS Statement Syntax

Parameters

- ID  
specifies a virtual ACS ID.  
*acsid*  
a decimal virtual ACS ID.
- VTSSNAME  
specifies the VTSS identifier that maps to the virtual ACS ID.  
*vtss-name*  
a VTSS identifier.

Usage

Use the VIRTACS statement to define a virtual ACS that maps to a VTSS to let clients connect to VSM.

Examples

To define virtual ACS 126 and map it to VTSS VTSS02, create the following VIRTACS statement:  
**VIRTACS ID(126) VTSSNAME(VTSS02)**

## SLGDIAG VIRTUAL\_DRIVE Parameter

The SLGDIAG utility now provides VIRTUAL\_DRIVE parameter that verifies LibraryStation operation with VSM in the following format (all decimal numbers):

=VIRTUAL\_DRIVE=*ascid,lsmid,panelid,driveid*

See *VTCS Installation and Configuration Guide* for more information on VTD drive addresses for LibraryStation and NCS clients.

You can use SLGDIAG to verify LibraryStation operation with VSM in either of the following ways:

- To verify LibraryStation operation with only VSM (but not with HSC), specify the =VIRTUAL\_DRIVE= parameter to query the specified VTD.
- To verify LibraryStation operation with VSM and HSC in the same batch job, specify the =VIRTUAL\_DRIVE= parameter and also the existing =DRIVE= and =VOLUME= parameters (which request a mount/dismount on the specified Nearline transport).

For more information on the SLGDIAG utility, see Chapter 5, “Administration and Maintenance” in *LibraryStation Operator and System Programmer’s Guide*.

## Chapter 4. MVS/CSC Enhancements and Additions for VSM

---

This chapter contains reference information about the following enhancements and additions to MVS/CSC to support VSM:

- “TAPEREQ Control Statement for MVS/CSC” on page 226 that can route tape data sets to VSM and pass a Management Class to VSM.



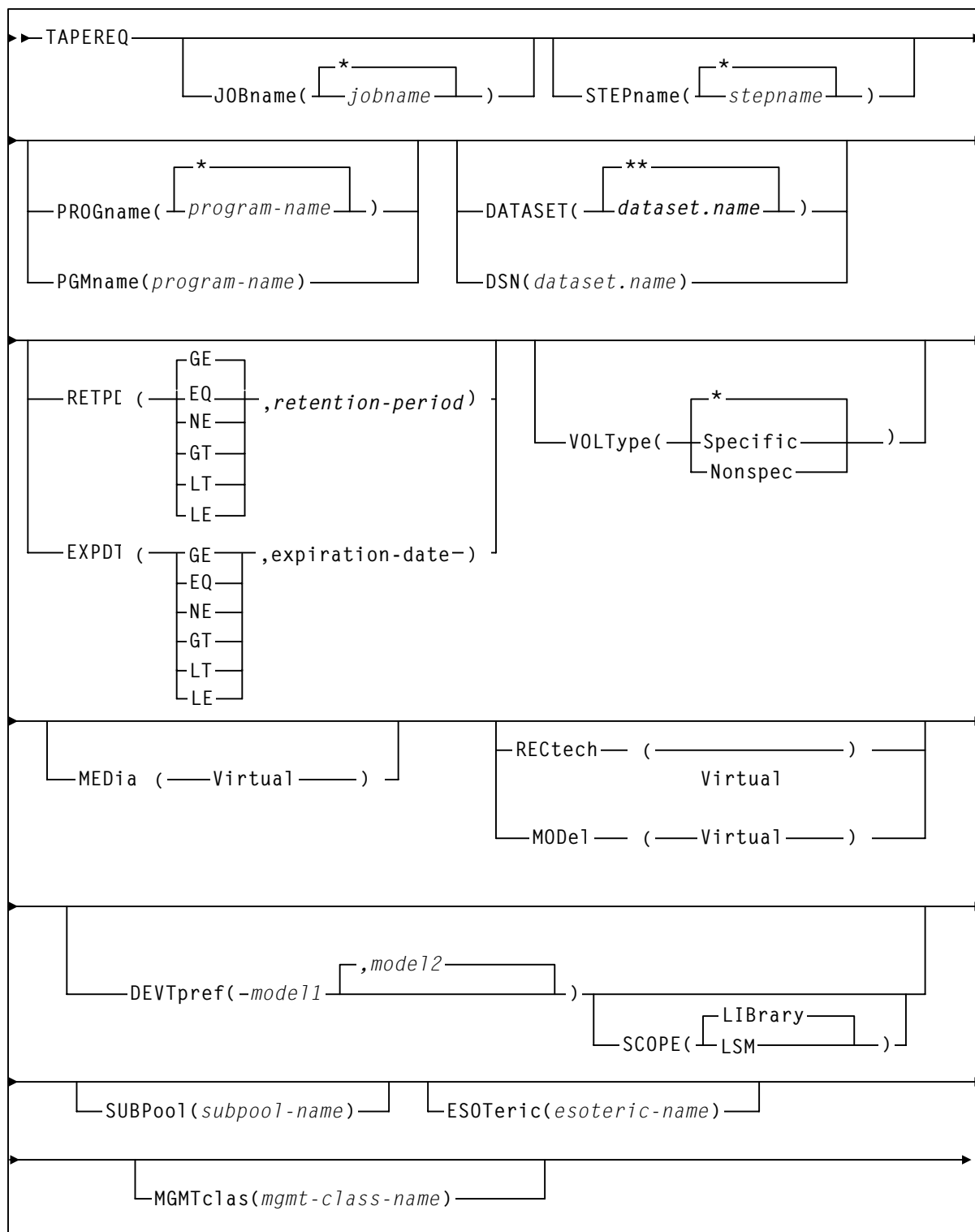
**Hint:** See Chapter 4, “Defining Mixed Media and Devices” of *MVS/CSC Configuration Guide* for information about using the TAPEREQ statement in a non-VSM NCS environment.

- “MVS/CSC Startup Parameter Enhancements” on page 231 for the DEFER and FETCH parameters.
- “MVS/CSC DISPLAY Command Enhancements” on page 231.
- “MVS/CSC User Exit Enhancements” on page 231.
- “MVS/CSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements” on page 232.
- “MVS/CSC DELDISP Parameter Enhancements” on page 232

## **TAPEREQ Control Statement for MVS/CSC**

The enhanced MVS/CSC TAPEREQ control statement can route tape data sets to VSM and pass a Management Class to VSM.

## Syntax



**Figure 140. MVS/CSC TAPEREQ Control Statement Syntax**

## Parameters

### Unchanged TAPEREQ Parameters

The following TAPEREQ parameters are unchanged but apply to VSM. Figure 140 on page 227 shows valid values for these parameters; see Chapter 4, “Defining Mixed Media and Devices” of *MVS/CSC Configuration Guide* for more information.

- JOBname
- STEPname
- PROGram
- PGMname
- DATASET
- DSN
- RETPD
- EXPDT
- VOLType
- DEVTpref
- SCOPE

### TAPEREQ Parameters Enhanced for VSM

The following TAPEREQ parameters have a new required value of `Virtual` for VSM only. `Virtual` does not apply to MVS/CSC without VSM installed.

`MEDIA`

specifies the volume media.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.

`RECTech`

specifies the recording technique.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.

`MODE1`

specifies the transport model.

`Virtual`

specifies that VSM will route the data set to a VTV mounted on a VTD.



**Hint:** Use either the `RECTech` or `MODE1` parameter but not both.



## New TAPEREQ Parameters

The following new TAPEREQ parameters apply to both VSM and MVS/CSC.

### SUBPoo1

specifies the scratch subpool that contains volumes used to satisfy nonspecific requests. If specified, the subpool supersedes any subpool specified by subpool number in User Exits 1, 2, or 4.

For more information about scratch subpool management, see Chapter 2, “Host Software Component Functions” of *HSC System Programmer’s Guide for MVS*.

*poolname*

the subpool name.

### ESOTeric

specifies the esoteric that defines the list of eligible transports to be used to satisfy a tape request.

To route a data set to a VTD, specify one of the esoteric names that you defined during configuration. For VSM, esoteric definition and substitution is different in JES2 and JES3.

For more information on using esoteric substitution to route a data set to Nearline transports that are *not* RTDs, see Chapter 8 or Chapter 9 in *MVS/CSC System Programmer’s Guide*.

*esoteric-name*

the esoteric name.

### MGMTclas

specifies the name of a Management Class you defined on the MGMTclas control statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177.

*mgmt-class-name*

the Management Class name.

## Usage

To route data sets to VSM with TAPEREQ statements, do one of the following:

- Specify `Virtual` on the `MEDia`, `MODe1`, or `RECtech` parameter. If you specify `Virtual`, VSM selects an available VTD in your system and routes the data set to that VTD.

In a multi-VTSS environment, therefore, specifying `Virtual` does *not* direct the VTD allocation to a specific VTSS, but lets the allocation occur in any VTSS in the configuration.

- Specify an esoteric that represents VTDs on the `ES0Teric` parameter.

For VSM, esoteric definition and substitution is different in JES2 and JES3.

You can also specify a Management Class on the `MGMTclas` parameter. You define Management Classes with the `MGMTclas` statement; for more information, see “MGMTCLAS Control Statement” on page 177. You use the `MGMTDEF` command to load `MGMTclas` statements from a specified definition data set (which resides on the HSC/LibraryStation server); for more information, see “MGMTDEF Command” on page 185.

You must use the `TREQDEF` command to load TAPEREQ control statements from a specified definition data set; see Chapter 3, “Defining MVS/CSC Startup Parameters” in *MVS/CSC Configuration Guide* for more information.

## Examples

See the TAPEREQ examples for HSC on page 199.

## MVS/CSC Startup Parameter Enhancements

The following sections describe the MVS/CSC startup parameter enhancements for VSM. For more information about MVS/CSC startup parameters, see Chapter 3, “Defining MVS/CSC Startup Parameters” in *MVS/CSC Configuration Guide*.

### DEFER

In the JES2 environment, regardless of the value you specify, the DEFER parameter is always set to ON for VTVs. That is, for VTVs, deferred mount processing is enabled, which overrides the mount processing specified in the user’s JCL. The VTV mount is deferred until the JCL job step opens a data set on the VTV. This value helps minimize VTV recalls. If a data set resides on a migrated VTV, VSM does not recall the VTV until the job actually opens the data set on the VTV.

In the JES3 environment, regardless of the value you specify, the DEFER parameter is always set to JES3 for VTVs, which causes all mounts to be JES3 deferred. A volume is not mounted until a step begins execution.

Note that if a unit affinity chain includes a mixture of incompatible drives (including VTDs), NCS SMC device exclusion always ensures that the chain will be broken.

### FETCH

FETCH specifies whether JES3 operator fetch message IAT5110 is issued during VTD allocation.

## MVS/CSC DISPLAY Command Enhancements

In a VSM configuration, the DISPLAY LIBUNITS command displays VIRTUAL for VTDs in the Model column. For more information about the DISPLAY LIBUNITS command, see Chapter 3, “Issuing MVS/CSC Operator Commands” of *MVS/CSC Operator’s Guide*. Note that you can use VTCS commands and reports on another host to produce additional VSM information.

## MVS/CSC User Exit Enhancements

MVS/CSC User Exit SCSUX02 (JES2 and JES3 without TAPE setup environments), which you use to control transport allocation for scratch mounts, now supports return code UX02VIRT in register 15. SCSUX04 (JES3 with TAPE setup environment) also supports return code UX04VIRT in register 15. To satisfy a scratch mount request, these return codes cause VSM to select an available VTD in your system and route the data set to a VTV mounted on that VTD. In a multi-VTSS environment, therefore, these return codes do *not* direct the VTD allocation to a specific VTSS, but let the allocation occur in any VTSS in the configuration.

Information returned from SCSUX09 (JES2 and JES3 without TAPE setup environments) and SCSUX11 (JES3 with TAPE setup environment) applies to real transports only and is ignored for VTDs. VTD mounts are automatically deferred. For more information about MVS/CSC User Exits, see Chapter 8 or Chapter 9 in *MVS/CSC System Programmer’s Guide*.

## MVS/CSC Programmatic Interface Enhancements

The SCSXREQM macro mappings are updated to support VSM as follows:

- The SCXVMED field can now display a value of VIRTUAL for VTVs.
- In the Volume Information Element, the formerly reserved field at decimal offset 24 is now an 8 byte character field with label SCXVTSSN. If SCXVMED is VIRTUAL, the volume is VTSS-resident, and MVS/CSC controls the VTD in the VTSS in which the VTV resides, SCXVTSSN displays the VTSS name. If the VTV is migrated, SCXVTSSN is blank.
- The field SCXVLC is hexadecimal zero for a VTV.

For more information about the SCSXREQM macro, see Appendix A, “SCSXREQM Macro Mappings” of *MVS/CSC System Programmer's Guide*.

## MVS/CSC DELDISP Parameter Enhancements

MVS/CSC provides two new settings for the DELDISP startup parameter which is specified in a sequential file (usually a PDS member) at initialization:

### ASCRTCH

(All scratch). Both real tape volumes and VTVs are made scratch if they were mounted scratch and the disposition on the dismount message is delete ('D').

### VSCRTCH

(Virtual scratch). Only VTVs are made scratch if they were mounted scratch and the delete disposition on the dismount message is delete ('D').

The current DELDISP settings (SCRTCH and NOSCRTCH) define scratch handling at dismount **only** for real volumes. In an MVS/CSC system, if DELDISP is set to either of these values, VTVs are **never** scratched at dismount.

Each MVS/CSC system can define its own startup parameter file and can have different settings for DELDISP. A recycle of an MVS/CSC system is not necessary to change the DELDISP setting. The MVS/CSC ALTER command can change the setting for DELDISP; it accepts the two new settings. When changing the DELDISP setting via the ALTER command, it goes into affect immediately for that MVS/CSC system. However, if the MVS/CSC is recycled, the DELDISP setting is set to the value defined in the startup parameter file; if omitted it defaults to NOSCRTCH.

## Appendix A. VTCS SMF Record Format

---

This appendix describes the formats of the HSC SMF record subtypes for VTCS events.



**Note:** In the record descriptions in this appendix, all generated timestamps, regardless of whether they are ttime or TOD values, are based on GMT time, not local time.

## SLSSMF10 - VTCS SMF Subtype 10 Record

**Function** Records a VTSS subsystem performance request.

**Table 19. SLSSMF10 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF10	VTCS SMF record subtype 10
0	0	character	8	SMF10VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF10BCH	base cache size (MB), where base cache is system space reserved for VTSS processing
10	A	hexstring	2	SMF10CCH	customer cache size (MB)
12	C	hexstring	4	SMF10OCH	offline cache size
16	10	hexstring	4	SMF10PCH	pinned cache size
20	14	hexstring	2	SMF10NSZ	nvs size (MB)
22	16	hexstring	8	SMF10TCT	reserved
30	1E	hexstring	8	SMF10TCP	total back end capacity
38	26	hexstring	8	SMF10FCT	reserved
46	2E	hexstring	8	SMF10FCP	total free back end capacity
54	36	hexstring	8	SMF10CFT	reserved
62	3E	hexstring	8	SMF10CFP	collected free back end capacity
70	46	hexstring	8	SMF10BRT	reserved
78	4E	hexstring	8	SMF10BRP	bytes read for free space collection
86	56	hexstring	8	SMF10SCT	reserved
94	5E	hexstring	8	SMF10SCP	total amount of free space collection
102	66	hexstring	2	SMF10RGC	redundancy group count
104	68	hexstring	8	SMF10CDT	reserved
112	70	hexstring	8	SMF10CDP	standard capacity defined
120	78	hexstring	4	SMF10EMP	count of ECAM-T messages processed
124	7C	hexstring	4	SMF10EBS	count of ECAM-T messages bypassed because no buffer space available
128	80	hexstring	4	SMF10EBC	count of ECAM-T messages bypassed because configuration was busy
132	84	hexstring	4	SMF10ECP	number of ECAM-T channel programs

## SLSSMF11 - VTCS SMF Subtype 11 Record

**Function** Records a VTSS channel interface performance request.

**Table 20. SLSSMF11 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF11	VTCS SMF record subtype 11
0	0	character	8	SMF11VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF11CNT	count of entries in this record the following fields repeat for each interface in this record
10	A	data		SMF11ENT	start of entry
10	A	character	8	SMF11INM	channel interface name
18	12	bitstring	2	SMF11CI	channel interface installed (y/n)
		X'0000'		SMF11CIN	no
		X'0001'		SMF11CIY	yes
20	14	bitstring	2	SMF11CE	channel interface enabled (y/n)
		X'0000'		SMF11CEN	no
		X'0001'		SMF11CEY	yes
22	16	hexstring	2	SMF11NAT	number of addresses trapped
24	18	hexstring	2	SMF11CSP	channel speed: 200 = 20 MB/sec ESCON channel
26	1A	hexstring	8	SMF11NIO	number of I/Os
34	22	hexstring	8	SMF11CUB	control unit busy (in v -seconds)
42	2A	bitstring	2	SMF11TOL	type of link
		X'0000'		SMF11TLH	host
		X'0001'		SMF11TLR	RTD
44	2C	length		SMF11ENL	length of each entry

## SLSSMF13 - VTCS SMF Subtype 13 Record

**Function** Records a VTV mount request.

**Table 21. SLSSMF13 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF13	VTCS SMF record subtype 13
0	0	character	8	SMF13VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	character	6	SMF13VID	VTV volser ID
14	E	character	2	SMF13DID	VTD device ID
16	10	bitstring	2	SMF13RWS	read/write state (thumbwheel)
		X'0001'		SMF13RRO	read only
		X'0002'		SMF13RRW	read/write
18	12	bitstring	2	SMF13VMT	virtual mount type
		X'0001'		SMF13EXT	mount existing VTV
		X'0002'		SMF13SSL	mount sl scratch VTV
		X'0003'		SMF13SNL	mount existing VTV as scratch
		X'0004'		SMF13SAL	mount ANSI label scratch VTV
20	14	hexstring	4	SMF13TIM	VTV timestamp (ttime format, seconds since 1/1/70)
24	18	bitstring	2	SMF13RCI	recall indicator
		X'0001'		SMF13MNR	mounted without a recall
		X'0002'		SMF13MRC	mounted after a recall
26	1A	character	14		reserved
38	26	character	8	SMF13JNM	MVS jobname
46	2E	character	8	SMF13SNM	MVS stepname
54	36	character	44	SMF13DSN	MVS data set name
98	62	hexstring	8	SMF13MST	mount start timestamp (TOD), where mount start occurs when VTCS receives a mount request from HSC (or VTCS generates the request), generates a new thread to handle the mount request, then determines whether the request is for an existing, new, or scratch VTV
106	6A	hexstring	8	SMF13MET	mount end timestamp (TOD), where mount end occurs when VTSS generates a successful response to the ECAM-T request to mount the VTV on the selected RTD
114	72	character	8	SMF13MGT	VTV Management Class



## SLSSMF14 - VTCS SMF Subtype 14 Record

**Function** Records a VTV dismount request.

**Table 22. SLSSMF14 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF14	VTCS SMF record subtype 14
0	0	character	8	SMF14VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	character	6	SMF14VID	VTV volser ID
14	E	bitstring	2	SMF14STA	VTV state
		X'0001'		SMF14MNT	VTV mounted
		X'0002'		SMF14DSM	VTV dismounted
		X'0003'		SMF14NON	VTV does not exist
		X'0004'		SMF14MIG	VTV is being migrated
		X'0005'		SMF14REC	VTV is being recalled
		X'0006'		SMF14VTM	VTV logically dismounted by VTVMaint
16	10	hexstring	2	SMF14DID	MVS device address
18	12	hexstring	4	SMF14VSZ	uncompressed size of the VTV in bytes
22	16	hexstring	4	SMF14MSZ	the number of virtual tape pages in 32K increments required to migrate the VTV to an RTD
26	1A	hexstring	4	SMF14TIM	the last time the VTV was successfully mounted on a VTD (time format, seconds since 1/1/70)
30	1E	hexstring	2	SMF14UL#	number of MVCs to unlink
32	20		2		reserved
34	22	bitstring	2	SMF14VMT	virtual mount type
		X'0001'		SMF14EXT	mount existing VTV
		X'0002'		SMF14SSL	mount sl scratch VTV
36	24	character	8	SMF14JNM	MVS jobname
44	2C	character	8	SMF14SNM	MVS stepname
52	34	character	44	SMF14DSN	MVS data set name

## SLSSMF15 - VTCS SMF Subtype 15 Record

**Function** Records a delete VTV request.

**Table 23. SLSSMF15 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF15	VTCS SMF record subtype 15
0	0	character	8	SMF15VTS	VTSS ID (blanks if migrated)
8	8	character	6	SMF15VID	virtual volser ID
14	E	character	4	SMF15TIM	VTV creation time (ttime format, seconds since 1/1/70)
18	12		4		reserved
22	16	character	4	SMF15LTR	time VTV last referenced (high order TOD value)
26	1A		4		reserved
30	1E	bitstring	2	SMF15RSN	VTV delete reason code
		X'0001'		SMF15NMM	VTV migrated then deleted
		X'0002'		SMF15MPR	VTV previously migrated
		X'0003'		SMF15SPR	VTV reclaimed
		X'0004'		SMF15CON	VTV consolidated
		X'0005'		SMF15OLD	invalid VTV version found
		X'0006'		SMF15DSC	VTV deleted on scratch
		X'0007'		SMF15IMP	VTV deleted by import
32	20	character	8	SMF15MGT	VTV Management Class
40	28	bitstring	2	SMF15LRI	last residency indicator
		X'0001'		SMF15LRR	last residency was for recall
		X'0002'		SMF15LRC	last residency was for create

## SLSSMF16 - VTCS SMF Subtype 16 Record

**Function** Records an RTD mount request.

**Table 24. SLSSMF16 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SMF16VTS	VTCS SMF record subtype 16
0	0	character	8	SMF16VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF16RID	RTD ID (0-F)
10	A	character	6	SMF16MID	MVC volser ID
16	10	character	6	SMF16AID	actual volser from VOL1 label
22	16	bitstring	2	SMF16RWS	read/write state (thumbwheel)
		X'0001'		SMF16RRO	read only state
		X'0002'		SMF16RRW	read/write state
24	18	bitstring	2	SMF16MT	mount request type
		X'0001'		SMF16MTM	migrate
		X'0002'		SMF16MTR	recall
		X'0003'		SMF16MTL	reclaim
		X'0004'		SMF16MTD	drain
		X'0005'		SMF16MTA	audit
		X'0006'		SMF16MTC	consolidate
		X'0007'		SMF16MTX	export
26	1A	hexstring	32	SMF16SNS	RTD sense data (all zeros or all X'FF's unless RTD errors occur)
58	3A	hexstring	8	SMF16MST	mount start timestamp (TOD), where mount start occurs when HSC receives a successful request to load the requested MVC
66	42	hexstring	8	SMF16MET	mount end timestamp (TOD), where mount end occurs when the VTSS receives a successful ECAM-T request to mount the requested MVC on an RTD
74	4A	character	8	SMF16SCL	MVC Storage Class

## SLSSMF17 - VTCS SMF Subtype 17 Record

**Function** Records an RTD dismount request.

**Table 25. SLSSMF17 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF17	VTCS SMF record subtype 17
0	0	character	8	SMF17VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF17RID	RTD ID (0-F)
10	A	hexstring	64	SMF17BLD	RTD buffered log data
74	4A	hexstring	32	SMF17SNS	RTD sense data (all zeros or all X'FF's unless RTD errors occur)
106	6A	character	8	SMF17SCL	MVC Storage Class
114	72	character	6	SMF17MVC	MVC volser

## SLSSMF18 - VTCS SMF Subtype 18 Record

**Function** Records a migrate VTV request.

**Table 26. SLSSMF18 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF18	VTCS SMF record subtype 18
0	0	character	8	SMF18VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF18RID	RTD ID (0-F)
10	A	character	6	SMF18VID	VTV volser ID
16	10	character	6	SMF18MID	MVC volser ID
22	16	hexstring	4	SMF18VPO	VTV position on this MVC (block ID)
26	1A	character	6	SMF18AID	actual volser from VOL1 label
32	20	hexstring	4	SMF18MSZ	uncompressed size of the VTV in bytes
36	24	hexstring	4	SMF18BCM	the number of virtual tape pages in 32K increments required to migrate the VTV to an RTD
40	28	hexstring	4	SMF18TIM	the last time the VTV was successfully mounted on a VTD (time format, seconds since 1/1/70)
44	2C	bitstring	2	SMF18MT	migrate request type
		X'0001'		SMF18MTA	auto
		X'0002'		SMF18MTI	immediate
		X'0003'		SMF18MTD	demand
		X'0004'		SMF18MTR	reclaim
		X'0005'		SMF18MTC	consolidate
		X'0006'		SMF18MTX	export
46	2E		2		reserved
48	30	hexstring	4	SMF18NPO	next MVC position (block ID)
52	34	hexstring	32	SMF18SNS	RTD sense
84	54	hexstring	8	SMF18MST	migrate start timestamp (TOD)
92	5C	hexstring	8	SMF18MET	migrate end timestamp (TOD)
100	64	character	8	SMF18MGT	VTV Management Class
108	6C	character	8	SMF18SCL	MVC Storage Class

## SLSSMF19 - VTCS SMF Subtype 19 Record

**Function** Records a recall VTV request.

**Table 27. SLSSMF19 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SMF19VTS	VTCS SMF record subtype 19
0	0	character	8	SMF19VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF19RTD	RTD ID (0-F)
10	A	character	6	SMF19VID	VTV volser ID
16	10	character	6	SMF19MID	MVC volser ID
22	16	hexstring	4	SMF19VPO	VTV position on this MVC (block ID)
26	1A	bitstring	2	SMF19RE	recall with error
		X'0000'		SMF19REN	no
		X'0001'		SMF19REY	yes
28	1C	character	6	SMF19AID	actual volser from VOL1 label
34	22	hexstring	4	SMF19MSZ	VTV media size
38	26	hexstring	4	SMF19BCM	number of bytes currently recalled
42	2A	hexstring	4	SMF19TIM	the last time the VTV was successfully mounted on a VTD (time format, seconds since 1/1/70)
46	2E	bitstring	2	SMF19MT	recall request type
		X'0001'		SMF19MTA	auto
		X'0002'		SMF19MTN	drain
		X'0003'		SMF19MTD	demand
		X'0004'		SMF19MTR	reclaim
		X'0005'		SMF19MTC	consolidate
		X'0006'		SMF19MTX	export
48	30		2		reserved
50	32	hexstring	32	SMF19SNS	RTD sense
82	52	hexstring	8	SMF19RST	recall start timestamp (TOD)
90	5A	hexstring	8	SMF19RET	recall end timestamp (TOD)
98	62	character	8	SMF19MGT	VTV Management Class
106	6A	character	8	SMF19SCL	MVC Storage Class

## SLSSMF20 - VTCS SMF Subtype 20 Record

**Function** Records an RTD performance request.

**Table 28. SLSSMF20 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF20	VTCS SMF record subtype 20
0	0	character	8	SMF20VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF20CNT	count of entries in this record the following fields repeat for each RTD in this record
10	A	area		SMF20ENT	start of entry
10	A	character	8	SMF20RNM	RTD name
18	12	bitstring	2	SMF20ST	RTD state
		X'0000'		SMF20STU	unconfigured
		X'0001'		SMF20STC	configured
20	14	hexstring	8	SMF20ATM	device available time (v -seconds), which is the time the MVC is mounted on the RTD
28	1C	hexstring	8	SMF20ACT	device activity (initial selects)
36	24	hexstring	8	SMF20BTR	bytes transferred - read
44	2C	hexstring	8	SMF20BTW	bytes transferred - write
52	34	hexstring	8	SMF20DUT	device utilization time (v -seconds), which is the accumulated time of each CCW chain to device end
60	3C	hexstring	8	SMF20DCT	device connect time (v -seconds), which is the accumulated time of each CCW chain to device end

## SLSSMF21 - VTCS SMF Subtype 21 Record

**Function** Records a vary RTD.

**Table 29. SLSSMF21 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF21	VTCS SMF record subtype 21
0	0	character	8	SMF21VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	hexstring	2	SMF21RTD	RTD ID (0-F)
10	A	bitstring	2	SMF21STA	new device state
		X'0001'		SMF21OFF	offline
		X'0002'		SMF21ON	online
		X'0003'		SMF21MAI	maintenance



## SLSSMF25 - VTCS SMF Subtype 25 Record

**Function** Records MVC status.

**Table 30. SLSSMF25 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF25	VTCS SMF record subtype 25
0	0	character	6	SMF25MID	MVC volser ID
6	6	hexstring	4	SMF25TFS	total free space (includes any space for invalid VTVs)
10	A	hexstring	4	SMF25UFS	usable free space (after the last valid VTV on the MVC)
14	E	hexstring	4	SMF25NAV	number of active VTVs
18	12	character	8	SMF25SCL	MVC Storage Class
26	1A	hexstring	4	SMF25TUS	space in Kb used by current VTVs
30	1E	hexstring	4	SMF25NDV	number of "holes" (deleted VTVs)
34	22	hexstring	4	SMF25LUT	top 4 bytes of the TOD clock when the MVC was last used
38	26	hexstring	4	SMF25LWT	top 4 bytes of the TOD clock when the MVC was last updated

## SLSSMF26 - VTCS SMF Subtype 26 Record

**Function** Records VTV movement.

**Table 31. SLSSMF26 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF26	VTCS SMF record subtype 26
0	0	character	8	SMF26VTS	VTSS ID
8	8	character	6	SMF26VID	VTV volser ID
14	E	character	6	SMF26OMI	old MVC volser ID
20	14	character	6	SMF26NMI	new MVC volser ID
26	1A	hexstring	4	SMF26VPO	VTV position on new MVC (block ID)
30	1E	hexstring	8	SMF26MST	move start timestamp (TOD)
38	26	hexstring	8	SMF26MET	move end timestamp (TOD)
46	2E	character	8	SMF26MGT	VTV Management Class

## SLSSMF27 - VTCS SMF Subtype 27 Record

**Function** Records VTV scratch status.

**Table 32. SLSSMF27 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF27	VTCS SMF record subtype 27
0	0	character	6	SMF27VID	VTV volser ID
6	6	character	8	SMF27MCL	VTV Management Class
14	E	bitstring	2	SMF27STP	VTV scratch type
		X'0001'		SMF27STN	no delete on scratch
		X'0002'		SMF27STD	delete on scratch
16	10	hexstring	4	SMF27MSZ	VTV media size
20	14	hexstring	4	SMF27TIM	the last time the VTV was updated (ttime format, seconds since 1/1/70)
24	18	hexstring	4	SMF27LUS	the last time the VTV was used (TOD format)
28	1C	hexstring	6	SMF27MV1	volser of MVC 1 that contains the VTV
34	22	hexstring	6	SMF27MV2	volser of MVC 2 that contains the VTV
40	28	character	8	SMF27VTS	VTSS name
48	30	bitstring	1	SMF27RES	VTV last resident indicator
			X'80'	SMF27RVT	resident on VTSS
			X'40'	SMF27RM1	resident on MVC1
			X'20'	SMF27RM2	resident on MVC2
49	31		7	SMF27SPR	reserved

## SLSSMF28 - VTCS SMF Subtype 28 Record

**Function** Records a VTV replication.

**Table 33. SLSSMF28 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF28	VTCS SMF Record sub-type 28
0	0	character	8	SMF28VTS	Primary VTSSname
8	8	character	8	SMF28SVT	Secondary VTSSname
16	10	character	8	SMF28CLN	Cluster Name
24	18	character	6	SMF28VID	VTV Volser
30	1E	hexstring	2	SMF28AID	CLINK CHANID
32	20	hexstring	1	SMF28DID	CLINK device-id
33	21	hexstring	7		reserved
40	28	hexstring	4	SMF28BCR	Bytes replicated for VTV
44	2C	hexstring	4	SMF28TIM	VTV last updated timestamp (seconds since 1/1/70)
48	30	hexstring	32	SMF28SNS	Sense data from CLINK
80	50	hexstring	8	SMF28RST	Replicate Start Time (TOD format)
88	58	hexstring	8	SMF28RET	Replicate End Time (TOD format)
96	60	hexstring	8	SMF28MGT	VTV Management Class

## SLSSMF29 - VTCS SMF Subtype 29 Record

**Function** Records a VTV and MVC unlink event.

**Table 34. SLSSMF29 Record Format**

Decimal Offset	Hexadecimal Offset	Type	Length	Label	Description
0	0	start of record		SLSSMF29	VTCS SMF Record sub-type 29
0	0	character	6	SMF29VID	VTV volser
6	6	character	6	SMF29MVC	MVC volser
12	C	character	2	SMF29MV#	number of remaining MVCs
14	E	bitstring	2	SMF29RSN	reason for unlink
		X'0001'		SMF29NLC	VTV no longer current (dismount)
		X'0002'		SMF29DRN	MVC drain/reclaim
		X'0003'		SMF29DOS	delete on scratch
		X'0004'		SMF29IMP	VTV import
		X'0005'		SMF29VMN	VTVMaint utility
		X'0006'		SMF29MVC	MVC inventory
		X'0007'		SMF29VTS	VTSS inventory
		X'0008'		SMF29VAD	VTV audit
16	10		6		reserved



## Appendix B. VTD Command Reference

---

### Overview

This appendix describes *only* that portion of the Virtual Tape Storage Subsystem (VTSS) that responds to 3490 style tape commands. This appendix is intended to be a programmer's guide for defining how the VTD behaves.

This appendix is meant to be read in conjunction with the *IBM 3490 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Models A01, A02, A10, A20, B02, B04, B20, and B40 Hardware Reference* (referred to in this book as the *IBM 3490 Hardware Reference*) and as such is not intended to be a stand-alone document. This appendix contains only that functionality which is different from the *IBM 3490 Hardware Reference*. Please review that document before reading this appendix.

### Bit Naming Conventions

Please be aware that the IBM convention of numbering bits has been used within this document. This means bit 0 is the most significant bit of a unit (byte, word, etc.) to be described and that the max bit N is the least significant bit.

### Discussion of 3480/3490 Terms

This section expands upon IBM terms such as tape products, media, and media formats as they relate to VTDs. It is only important in the fact that the VTSS must respond accurately to the commands described within this document.

See "Product and Media Type Emulation" on page 253 for how the VTD responds in command data.

**Table 35. Product Designators and Capabilities**

Product or Model Designators	Commands Respond as...	18 track capable	IDRC capable	36 track capable	long tape capable
3480 B02 or B04	3480 02 or 04	yes	opt		
3490 B02 or B04	3480 02 or 04	yes	std		
3490 B20 or B40 (a.k.a. 3490E)	3490 20 or 40	read only	yes	yes	yes

**Table 36. Media and Media capabilities**

Media Name	with this Model	can support 18 track	can support IDRC	can support 36 track	can support long tape
3480	3480 B02 or B04	yes	opt.		
3480	3490E	read only	yes	yes	

<b>Media Name</b>	<b>with this Model</b>	<b>can support 18 track</b>	<b>can support IDRC</b>	<b>can support 36 track</b>	<b>can support long tape</b>
3490E “Enhanced” i.e. long tape	3490E	NO	yes	yes	yes

**Table 37. Formatted Media Designators**

<b>if IDRC blocks exist</b>	<b>if 36 track</b>	<b>then, media is known to be formatted as a</b>
-	-	3480
yes	-	3480 XF
yes	yes	3480-2 XF
-	yes	3480 XF

**Summary:**

1. An “E” in a product designator always has IDRC, 36 track, and long tape capability (using 3490E media). The E in a product is the same as a 3490E or B20 or B40 product capability
2. An “E” in the media designator (a.k.a. 3490E media) always means long tape.
3. All 36 track machines always have IDRC capability
4. A 3490 B02 or B04 is a repackaged 3480 B02 OR B04 but responds in a command as a 3480. The B02 refers to 2 drives in a frame. The B04 refers to 4 drives in a frame.
5. The B20 refers to 2 drives in a frame. The B40 refers to 4 drives in a frame.



## Command Overview

### Characteristics of the VTD

Although the Virtual Tape Device (VTD) emulates a 3490 type of device, it does have certain characteristics that differentiate it from that of a physical tape I/O system.

**Defects.** Data written to and recalled from virtual tape volumes are free of defects and gaps. Once this data is migrated to and recalled from real tape, the possibility of defects arises. If the VTSS encounters a data error recalling a volume from real tape, that error will be preserved when the data is eventually read by the host.

**IDRC always Enabled.** Data is *always* compressed when it is written to the VTSS and then uncompressed when it is read back to the channel. It is not possible to disable IDRC within the VTSS.

### Product and Media Type Emulation

Throughout the descriptions of command data, the VTD responds as described in Table 38. The Virtual Tape Volume (VTV) media always appears as a 400 MB (compressed) 36 track 3480 style cartridge. Command data refers to this as a 3480-2 XF format.

The amount of customer data that can be compressed into 400 MB varies with the data, but compression in the VTSS is better than that of standard IDRC rates.

Refer to “Discussion of 3480/3490 Terms” on page 251 for a discussion of what these terms mean.

**Table 38. VTSS Type Emulation**

	command response
Control Unit type	3490 A20
Tape Unit type	3490 B40
Media type	3480 (standard)
Media formatted as...	3480-2 XF

The commands that return this data include the Read Buffered Log, Read Subsystem Data, Read Device Characteristics, Sense ID and Read Configuration Data commands.

### Command Summary

Table 39 represents a summary of commands described in the *IBM 3490 Command Reference* manual. They are grouped by their type along with their command codes. This table also indicates whether this command operates differently than that described in the *IBM 3490 Command Reference* manual. For those commands that are different, a unique command description is contained later on in this document.

**Table 39. Command Difference Summary**

Command	Mnemonic	Hex	Cmd Difference	Typical Functionality
<b>DATA TRANSFER COMMANDS</b>				
Write	WRT	01	Yes	Indicates device readiness or returns pending status
Channel Path Operation	No-CP	NOP	13	Only command that writes user data to tape
Read Forward	RDF	02	Yes	Indicates channel path readiness or returns pending status
Read Block ID	RBD	22	Yes	Reads data in the forward direction
Read Backward	RDB	0C	Yes	Returns current positional information
Read Buffer	RBF	43	Yes	Reads data in the backwards direction
Synchronize	SYNC	12	Yes	Flushes buffered write data to device
Locate Block	LOC	4F	Yes	Returns any non-written buffered device data
<b>TAPE CONTROL COMMANDS</b>				
Rewind	REW	07	-	Positions the tape at the desired block ID
Rewind Unload	RUN	0F	-	Positions the tape to the beginning of tape
Erase Gap	ERG	17	Yes	Rewinds and unloads the tape
Write Tape Mark	WTM	1F	-	Used in error handling
Backward Space Block	BSB	27	-	Writes a tape mark on tape
Backward Space File	BSF	2F	-	Positions backward past the previous tape mark or block
Forward Space Block	FSB	37	-	Positions backward past the previous tape mark
Forward Space File	FSF	3F	-	Positions to the next tape mark or block
Data Security Erase	DSE	97	Yes	Positions to the next tape mark
<b>DEVICE MANAGEMENT COMMANDS</b>				
Test I/O	TIO	00	-	Writes a random pattern from current position to the end of tape
Not used in ESCON attached CUs				

[illegible]

Command	Mnemonic	Hex	Cmd Difference	Typical Functionality
PATH MANAGEMENT COMMANDS				
Sense Path Group ID	SNID	34	(3)	Returns pathing information
Suspend Multipath Reconnection	SMR	5B	(3)	Suspends multipath reconnections
Set Path Group ID	SPID	AF	(3)	Controls grouping of paths and devices to a controlling computer
Assign	ASN	B7	(3)	Assigns the device to a channel path ID
Unassign	UNA	C7	(3)	Unassigns the device from a channel path ID
Control Access	CAC	E3	(3)	Provides password protected overrides of Assign facility
<p>Notes:</p> <p>(1) For more information, see <i>ESA/390 Common I/O-Device Commands and Self Description</i>. The contents of the VTSS's NEDs, NEQs, NDs, and NQs may vary slightly from that of an actual 3490 subsystem.</p> <p>NED - Node Element Descriptor - contains data such as type of device, model, manufacturer, plant, serial-number.</p> <p>NEQ - Node Element Qualifier -</p> <p>ND - Node Descriptor - similar but different than NEDs</p> <p>NQ - Node Qualifier - similar but different than NEQs</p> <p>(2) CIW - Channel Information Word - Identifies to channel which commands to use for Read Configuration, Set Interface Identifier, Read Node Identifier</p> <p>(3) Functions identically to an IBM 3490E tape drive, whose functionality differs from the commands' descriptions in the <i>IBM 3490E Hardware Reference</i>. See "Path Management Commands" on page 273.</p>				

## Command Dependent Unit- Checks

There are very few changes to Command Dependent Unit-Checks described in the *IBM 3490E Hardware Reference*.

Any command used in an active ECAM-T chain is exempt from the “Assigned Elsewhere” unit Check.

Any command issued to an unconfigured virtual tape address can receive a “Device Offline” Unit-Check.

## Virtual Not-Ready

As with a real 3490E, when there is no volume (VTV) mounted on a virtual tape, the unit can return a “Not Ready” Unit-Check to all eligible commands. While a real 3490E can also return a “Not Ready” Unit-Check for a mounted volume when the operator has toggled a Not-Ready state by depressing the “READY” key on the unit, no such manual facility exists for a VTSS virtual tape unit.

However, when an “Out-of-Capacity” condition exists in a VTSS, any Write command issued to a VTV mounted on that VTSS will create a “Virtual Not-Ready” condition at that virtual tape unit. The initial Write command will receive a “Drive Switched Not-Ready” Unit-Check, and all subsequent eligible commands will receive a “Not Ready” Unit-Check until the “Out-of-Capacity” condition is handled (by VTV migration or deletion).

When the “Out-of-Capacity” condition no longer exists, the VTSS will signal “Attention/Ready” to all paths which received a “Not Ready” Unit-Check.

In all aspects, the VTSS “Virtual Not-Ready” condition appears identical to an operator toggle of the “READY” key on a real 3490E.

## Command Dependent Execution Status

Table 40 on page 258 shows the normal status that is generated for the commands as a result of command acceptance and execution. The VTSS status is different from that of a physical tape I/O subsystem

Note that the VTSS does not disconnect from the channel using CE only status. It always uses CCR (Disconnect Channel Command Retry) to disconnect. As a result, the possibility of a third status does not exist.



**Note:** Whenever the term CCR is used within this specification, it always refers to Disconnect Channel Command Retry (represented by a hex 4A). In ESCON I/O specifications this is also referred to as Deferred Command Retry.

When a CCRed command results in Unit Check or Unit Exception, the UC or UE indication can be presented combined with Device End in the final status. This will result in 0x06 or 0x05 final status instead of the 0x0E or 0x0D seen on the 3490e.

The column labeled CCR describes those conditions unique to this command for using CCR to disconnect. Those reasons are as follows.

**b**

The necessary buffer and data for performing the operation is not available.

**p**

The necessary data transfer path for performing the operation is not available.

**Table 40. Command Dependent Execution Status**

Command	Mnemonic	Hex value	Initial Status	Second Status	CCR b p	Other Status
DATA TRANSFER COMMANDS						
Write	WRT	01	CMR	CE+DE	y y	UC, UE
Read Forward	RDF	02	CMR	CE+DE	y y	UC, UE
Read Backward	RDB	0C	UC	-	- -	-
Read Buffer (no data is ever transferred)	RBF	12	CMR	CE+DE	- -	-
TAPE CONTROL COMMANDS						
Rewind	REW	07	CE+DE	-	- -	UC
Rewind Unload	RUN	0F	CE+DE	-	y -	UC
Erase GAP	ERG	17	CE+DE	-	- -	-
Write Tape Mark	WTM	1F	CE+DE	-	y -	UC, UE
Backward Space Block	BSB	27	CE+DE	-	y -	UC, UE
Backward Space File	BSF	2F	CE+DE	-	y -	UC
Forward Space Block	FSB	37	CE+DE	-	y -	UC, UE
Forward Space File	FSF	3F	CE+DE	-	y -	UC
Data Security Erase	DSE	97	CE+DE	-	y -	UC
DEVICE MANAGEMENT COMMANDS						
Test I/O	TIO	00	not issued to ESCON devices			
No-Operation	NOP	03	CE+DE	-	- -	UC
Channel Path No-Operation	CPNOP	13	CE+DE	-	- -	UC
Read Block ID	RBID	22	CMR	CE+DE	- -	UC

<b>Command</b>	<b>Mnem- onic</b>	<b>Hex valu e</b>	<b>Initial Status</b>	<b>Second Status</b>	<b>CCR b p</b>	<b>Other Status</b>
Synchronize	SYNC	43	CE+D E	--	--	UC
Locate Block	LOC	4F	CMR	CE+DE	y -	UC
Load Display	LDD	9F	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Set Tape Write Immediate	TWI	C3	CE+D E	-	--	UC
Mode Set	MDS	DB	CMR	CE+DE	y -	UC
SUBSYSTEM COMMANDS						
Sense	SNS	04	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Read Buffered Log	RBL	24	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC, UE
Read Subsystem Data	RSSD	3E	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Read Message ID	RMID	4E	CMR	CE+DE	--	-
Read Device Characteristics	RDC	64	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Set Interface Identifier	SII	73	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Perform Sub- system Function	PSF	77	CMR	CE+DE	y -	UC
Sense ID	SNSID	E4	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Read Configura- tion Data	RCD	FA	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
PATH MANAGEMENT COMMANDS						
Sense Path Group ID	SNID	34	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Suspend Multi- path Reconnec- tion	SMR	5B	CE+D E	-	--	UC
Set Path Group ID	SPID	AF	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Assign	ASN	B7	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Unassign	UNA	C7	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC
Control Access	CAC	E3	CMR	CE+DE	--	UC

Command	Mnem- onic	Hex valu e	Initial Status	Second Status	CCR b p	Other Status
Notes: For many of the immediate commands, IBM documents them as returning CE in initial status to be followed by DE. The VTSS has the capability to present CE+DE in initial status when it can immediately execute the command. This behavior is the same as the Timberline Tape Subsystem.						

## Retry Status

The VTSS does not issue command retry for various buffer synchronization scenarios that exist in typical tape I/O systems for buffer management, read to write switches, direction changes, and so forth.

The VTSS, however, does issue command retry when either:

- The necessary buffer and data for performing the operation is not available.
- The necessary data transfer path for performing the operation is not available.

Table 40 on page 258 details when these are issued for each command.

The VTSS also uses command retry to temporarily disconnect from the interface when the CU must perform certain recovery scenarios. These scenarios can occur at any time and will occur on *any* command. These scenarios arise when the VTSS must perform a restart of its internal microcode.



## Differentiated Channel Command Descriptions

### Data Security Erase Command

On physical tape I/O subsystems, the Data Security Erase command writes a random pattern from the position of the tape where the command is issued to the physical end of tape.

Due to the manner in which VTSS can store multiple versions of a given tape volume on various Multi-Volume-Cartridges (MVCs), it is not practical to perform an erase on these various MVCs. As such this command does not perform a physical erase of previous versions of the volume. It does, however, perform an erase of data from the current position on the tape to the end of the virtual tape. The erase is performed logically with no actual writing of data.

### Erase Gap Command

The Erase Gap command writes a unique erase gap pattern on physical tape for the purposes of skipping over media.

Writes to VTSS have no such media problems, and as such this command performs no real function other than effecting a read-to-write change.

### Load Display Command

For normal tape subsystems, this command controls the text of messages on the message display of the selected device. It also controls the operation of an automatic cartridge loader.

The VTSS has neither a message display nor an automatic cartridge loader. As such, this command is accepted but has no standard effect on the control unit. If the “Index Automatic Load” function-byte bit is set, a Command Reject results.

However, the Load Display command IS used by the VTSS for a special purpose: to signal that this channel program follows the ECAM-T protocol for special host-to-VTSS communications.

Note that the Assigned-Elsewhere Unit-Check does not apply to an LDD used for the “ECAM-T Handshake”; for the non-ECAM-T case it is a low-priority check.

### Locate Block

The Locate Block command moves the tape into position on the addressed tape drive so the controlling computer can write or read a specific block on the tape. For normal tape I/O systems, the search first occurs on the segment or physical level and then proceeds to search for the Logical Block by reading data. For the VTSS, the search is performed logically using table lookup means and does not suffer from any typical media vagaries such as defects.

**Mode Set Command**

The Mode Set command controls specific aspects of command processing within a given command chain. The VTSS accepts this command but has the following characteristics.

- If the parameters specify that Tape-Write-Immediate Mode be turned off, it will be ignored because the VTSS always operates in non-buffered mode.
- If the parameters specify that IDRC be turned off, it too will be ignored because the VTSS always attempts to compress data - it cannot be disabled.
- The Supervisor Inhibit bit is implemented as described.

**Perform Subsystem Function Command**

The actual functionality of the Perform Subsystem Function command is determined by an order byte (byte 0 of the data). Only a few of these orders have any real functionality, and they are documented in the Table 41. If no support is provided for an order, the order and the following data is accepted and checked for parameter compliance. If the parameters are not legal, the command is rejected with ERA 27 (Command Reject). If the parameters are correct, the command is unit checked with ERA 29 (Function Not Compatible).

**Table 41. Perform Subsystem Function orders**

Order (hex)	Description	Support
18	Prepare for Read Subsystem Data	No
1B	Set Special Intercept Condition	No
1C	Message Not Supported	No
80	Activate Forced Error Logging	No
81	Deactivate Forced Error Logging	No
82	Activate Access Control	Yes
83	Deactivate Access Control	Yes
90	Reset Volume Fence	No
A1	Pin Device	No
A2	Unpin Device	No

**Table 42. Perform Subsystem Function data**

Byte	Description
0	Perform Subsystem Function order (refer to prior table)
1	Perform Subsystem Function flag
2-N	Order parameters (refer to following sections for parameters)

## Activate Access Control Order

This order allows the control program to activate various access control mechanisms for the device. For any bit that is set to 1 that the VTSS supports, that feature is activated until another Activate or Deactivate Access Control Order is received OR the volume is unloaded.

**Table 43. Activate Access Control Order parameters**

Byte	Bit	Description
0		Order, set to x80
1		Flag byte, set to 0
2	0	Logical Write Protect
	1-2	Reserved, set to 0
	3	Data Compaction Default - NOT SUPPORTED The VTSS <i>always</i> writes data using Compaction. It is not possible to disable this functionality. This bit is ignored.
	4-5	Reserved, set to 0
	6	Data Check Recovery - NOT SUPPORTED This bit is ignored.
	7	Extended Recovery - NOT SUPPORTED This bit is ignored.
3		Reserved, set to 0

## Deactivate Access Control Order

This order allows the control program to *de*-activate various access control mechanisms for the device. For any bit that is set to 1 that the VTSS supports, that feature is *de*-activated until another Activate or Deactivate Access Control Order is received OR the volume is unloaded.

**Table 44. De-activate Access Control Order parameters**

Byte	Bit	Description
0		Order, set to x81
1		Flag byte, set to 0
2	0	Logical Write Protect
	1-2	Reserved, set to 0
	3	Data Compaction Default - NOT SUPPORTED The VTSS <i>always</i> writes data using Compaction. It is not possible to disable this functionality. This bit is ignored.
	4-5	Reserved, set to 0
	6	Data Check Recovery - NOT SUPPORTED This bit is ignored.
	7	Extended Recovery - NOT SUPPORTED This bit is ignored.
3		Reserved, set to 0

## Read Backwards Command

A Read Backward command causes data for one logical block to be transferred from the control unit to the channel. The logical block transferred is the next sequential logical block in the backward direction from the program's perspective. The data is transferred in reverse order (last byte first, first byte last).

The VTSS does not directly support this command. Instead, it always positions in front of the desired block, and if that block is not a tape mark, returns unit check status with an ERA code of 26 (Read Opposite) which forces the IOS driver to issue a Read Forward command followed by a Back Space Block command. If the desired block was a tape mark, the VTSS returns unit exception status indicating that end-of-file has been encountered.

## Read Block ID Command

The Read Block ID command transfers 8 bytes of information from the control unit to the channel that identifies the next block to be read or written in the forward direction. For buffered physical tape I/O, the data returned identifies positional data for the channel side of the buffer and the physical side of the buffer.

Since VTSS tape I/O always operates in a non-buffered mode, the positional data for the channel side and physical side of the buffer are always the same. The positional data is fully emulated for a 400 MB cartridge.

## Read Buffer Command

The Read Buffer command transfers data from the control unit to the channel if any buffered write data is in the control unit's buffer. This data is retrieved via this command typically when the tape CU is unable to write the data to the media.

But since all write data to the VTSS is held in non-volatile storage until it can be moved to either back-end RAID or physical type devices, write data is always immediately committed to permanent storage and as such no data is ever in the "buffer".

On receipt of this command, "no data available" or "buffer empty" is indicated by transferring zero bytes.

## Read Buffered Log Command

For VTSS, the Read Buffered Log command always transfers 64 bytes (Format 30) of buffered log data from the control to the channel. Format 30 is presented since compression is always enabled. Refer to "Status and Sense Bytes" on page 274 for a description of the buffered log data. Note that as with a 3490, if all log counters are zero, the VTSS returns unit exception status.

## Read Configuration Data Command

A Read Configuration Data command causes 160 bytes of data to be transferred from the control unit to the channel. The specific data returned by the VTSS is defined in Table 45.

**Table 45. Read Configuration Data Command data**

Byte	Bit	Description
DEVICE NED		
0		Flags = 1100 1100
1		Type = x01 (I/O Device)

Byte	Bit	Description
2		Class = x02 (Magnetic Tape)
3	0-6	0
	7	Level = 0 (no hierarchic Relationship)
4-9		Type Number = xF0F0F3F4F9F0 (EBCDIC for 003490)
10-12		Model Number = xC2F4F0 (EBCDIC for B40)
13-15		Manufacturer = xE2E3D2 (EBCDIC for STK)
16-17		Plant of Manufacture
18-20		Family code which identifies this subsystem as a VTSS (EBCDIC)
21-29		Sequence Number in EBCDIC
30-31		Tag = x00XX where XX=VTape Address (0-F) (xFF & VDID)
CONTROL UNIT NED		
32		Flags = 1101 0100 (or 1100 1100)
33		Type = x02 (Control Unit)
34		Class = x00 (Unspecified class)
35	0-6	0
	7	Level = 0 (no hierarchic Relationship)
36-41		Type Number = xF0F0F3F4F9F0 (EBCDIC for 003490)
42-44		Model Number = xC1F2F0 (EBCDIC for A20)
45-47		Manufacturer = xE2E3D2 (EBCDIC for STK)
48-49		Plant of Manufacture
50-51		Family code which identifies this subsystem as a VTSS (EBCDIC)
52-61		Lower bytes of the Sequence Number in EBCDIC
62-63		Tag = x00XX where XX = Control-Unit-Image-# (VCU/Cluster) ... = ((xC0 & VDID) + (x01 & ClusterID)) [ See “Control Unit Images” on page 6–43. ]
LIBRARY NED		
64-95		0
TOKEN NED		
96		Flags = 1110 1100
97		Type = x00 (Unspecified)
98		Class = x00 (Unspecified class)
99	0-6	0
	7	Level = 0 (no hierarchic Relationship)

Byte	Bit	Description
100-105		Type Number = xF0F0F3F4F9F0 (EBCDIC for 003490)
106-108		Model Number = xC2F4F0 (EBCDIC for B40)
109-111		Manufacturer = xE2E3D2 (EBCDIC for STK)
112-113		Plant of Manufacture
114-116		Family code which identifies this subsystem as a VTSS (EBCDIC)
117-125		Sequence Number in EBCDIC
126-127		Tag = x0000
GENERAL NEQ		
128		Flags = 1000 0000
129		Record Selector = x80 for Control Unit 0 == Cluster 0 x81 for Control Unit 1 == Cluster 1
130-131		Interface ID (Refer to the “Tag or Interface ID” table under Read Subsys Data command)
132		Device Dependent Time-out = x00
133-135		Reserved = 0 (tbd: MIHPTO / MIHSTO)
136		Extended Information = x00 for logical addresses x0 - x7 x01 for logical addresses x8 - xF
137-159		0

## Read Device Characteristics Command

The Read Device Characteristics command transfers 64 bytes of data from the control unit to the channel. The information fields are defined in Table 46 for the VTSS.

**Table 46. Read Device Characteristics Command data**

Byte	Bit	Description
0-1		Control unit type = x3490
2		Control unit model = x20
3-4		Tape unit type = x3490
5		Tape unit model = 0x40
6-7		0
8	0-3	0
	4	0 - Set special intercept condition
	5	1 - Channel Path no operation
	6	1 - Logical Write Protect
	7	1 - Extended Buffered Log
9	0	0
	1	1 - IDRC
	2	0
	3-7	0
10		Device class code = x80
11		Device type code = x80
12-31		0
32-39		0
40		Miscellaneous data record = x42 (Model A10 or A20)
41		Outboard recorder (OBR) ID = x81 (Model A10 or A20)
42-63		0

## Read Forward Command

This command transfers data from the control unit to the channel. It operates as described in the *IBM 3490 Command Reference*.



**Note:** When data chaining a Read Forward command, the VTSS supports a minimum data chained update count as determined by the following formula:

$$T_{\text{update}} * (65152 / \text{Update\_Count}) < 400\text{ms}$$

Where:

$T_{\text{update}}$  = the time between data chained command updates (in milliseconds)

Update\_Count = CCW count for the data chained update (in bytes, rounded up)

As an example, if  $T_{\text{update}}$  is 50 usec (0.050 msec), the data chain update CCW count must be greater than 17 bytes.

## Read Message ID Command

The Read Message ID command is used to read the message identifier that was assigned by the control unit to commands that indicated the message-required flag requesting notification when an asynchronous operation is complete.

This command must be chained to a sequence of PSF and PSR commands, and the VTD does not implement this sequence. The Read Message ID command always returns unit check status with ERA code 27.

## Read Subsystem Data Command

This command is used to obtain information from the subsystem. The data returned by the subsystem depends on the command immediately preceding this command. If the Read Subsystem Data command is the first command in a command chain or it is not immediately preceded by a Set Interface Identifier command, a sequence error is detected and it is unit checked with ERA code 27. The data returned is dependent on the Node Selector value in the Set Interface Identifier data.

**Table 47. Identification of Current Interface (node selector=0)**

Byte	Bit	Description
Node Descriptor (ND)		
0		Flags = 0
1		Reserved = 0
2		Class = 0 (unspecified)
3		Reserved = 0
4-9		Type Number = xF0F0F3F4F9F0 (EBCDIC for 003490)
10-12		Model Number = xC2F4F0 (EBCDIC for B40)
13-15		Manufacturer = xE2E3D2 (EBCDIC for STK)
16-17		Plant of Manufacture
18-29		Sequence Number in EBCDIC



Byte	Bit	Description
30-31		Tag (or Interface ID) (refer to Tag or Interface ID table)
Node Qualifier (NQ)		
32		Flags = 0
33-39		Reserved = 0
40-43		Node Qualifier Information Port 0 = 0x42010080 (which is comprised of the following individual bits)
	0-1	Entry type = 01 (contains interface ID)
	2-3	Reserved = 0
	4-7	Interface Protocol Type = 0010 (ESCON I/O)
	8-11	Reserved = 0
	12-15	SAT (Subassembly Type) = 0001 (LED Fiber optic)
	16-31	Interface ID (refer to Tag or Interface ID table)

**Table 48. Identification of Specified Interface 1D(node selector=1)**

Byte	Bit	Description
Node Descriptor (ND)		
0		Flags = 0
1		Reserved = 0
2		Class = 0 (unspecified)
3		Reserved = 0
4-9		Type Number = xF0F0F3F4F9F0 (EBCDIC for 003490)
10-12		Model Number = xC2F4F0 (EBCDIC for B40)
13-15		Manufacturer = xE2E3D2 (EBCDIC for STK)
16-17		Plant of Manufacture
18-29		Sequence Number in EBCDIC
30-31		Tag (or Interface ID) (refer to Tag or Interface ID table)

**Table 49. Identification of Specified Interface 1D(node selector=2)**

Byte	Bit	Description
Node Descriptor (ND)		
0		Flags = 0
1-3		Reserved = 0

Byte	Bit	Description
4-9		Type Number
10-12		Model Number
13-15		Manufacturer
16-17		Plant of Manufacture
18-29		Sequence Number in EBCDIC
30-31	0-15 Tag (refer to Tag or Interface ID table)	

**Table 50. Identification of Specified Interface 1D(node selector=2) but attached node is unknown**

Byte	Bit	Description
Node Descriptor (ND)		
0		Flags = 0
1-31		0

**Table 51. Tag or Engraves ID**

Bit	Description
0-15	Tag (or Interface ID)
00000000 0ssc00pp where ss = Card slot in cluster (00-11) c = Cluster (0 or 1) pp = ESCON port id (00-01)	

**Sense ID Command**

The Sense ID command transfers 20 bytes of data from the control unit to the channel. Table 52 shows specific data returned for this product. The CIW format does not differ from that of the *IBM 3490 Hardware Reference* but is included here for convenience.

**Table 52. Sense ID Command data**

Byte	Description
0	xFF
1-2	Control unit type = x3490 (Model A10 or A20)
3	Control unit model = x20 (Model A20)
4-5	Tape unit type = x3490 (model B20 or B40)
6	Tape unit model = x40 (Model B20 or B40)
7	0
8-11	CIW Read Configuration Data = x40FA00A0
12-15	CIW Set Interface Identifier = x41730004
16-19	CIW Read Node Identifier = x423E0060 (specifies the Read Subsystem Data)

**Table 53. Channel Information Word (CIW) Format**

Bit	Description
0-1	Entry Type - 0,1 (for CIW)
2-3	0,0
4-7	Command type specified x0 (Read Configuration Data) x1 (Set Interface Identifier) x2 (Read Node Id)
8-15	Command Code
16-31	Maximum bytes by specified command

**Set Interface Identifier**

The valid Interface ID's for VTSS are: 0x0000, 0x0001, 0x0010, 0x0011, 0x0020, 0x0021, 0x0030, 0x0031, 0x0040, 0x0041, 0x0050, 0x0051, 0x0060, 0x0061, 0x0070, and 0x0071. The actual Interface ID for an addressed device-path pair can be determined from the RCD command.

**Set Tape Write Immediate Command**

On physical tape I/O subsystems, the Set Tape-Write-Immediate command causes all subsequent Write commands in the channel program to perform as write-immediate commands.

For the VTSS, this command has no effect since tape writes *always* operate in non-buffered write mode.

## Synchronize Command

On physical tape I/O subsystems, the Synchronize command causes synchronization between the tape drive and the controlling computer after buffered write operations.

Since the VTSS tape I/O does not “buffer” writes, this command performs no real operations and as such executes immediately without disconnection.

## Write Command

The Write command causes data for one logical block to be transferred from the channel to the control unit. This command executes as described with the exception that it only operates in Non-buffered Write Mode.



**Hint:** When data chaining a Write command, the VTSS supports a minimum data chained update count as determined by the following formula:

$$T_{\text{update}} * (65152 / \text{Update\_Count}) < 400\text{ms}$$

Where:

$T_{\text{update}}$  = the time between data chained command updates (in milliseconds)

Update\_Count = CCW count for the data chained update (in bytes, rounded up)

As an example, if  $T_{\text{update}}$  is 50 usec (0.050 msec), the data chain update CCW count must be greater than 17 bytes.

## Path Management Commands

The VTSS attempts to perform path management commands in a manner identical to the 3490E tape controller. For detailed information on how path management commands are designed to be handled by tape control units, refer back to one of the following:

- *IBM 3480 Magnetic Tape Subsystem Reference*
- *IBM 3480 Installation Guide and Reference*

While these describe their operation in the 3480 tape subsystem, the architecture of the commands for managing path groups, especially for “Selectable Devices”, does not appear to have been changed. In fact, to be compatible across multiple generations of equipment, they cannot be changed, only extended.

Assign (ASN)	No Change from the 3490E.
Control Access (CAC)	No Change from the 3490E.
Sense Path Group ID (SNID)	(See “Path Group Effects” on page 282.)
Set Path Group ID (SPID)	(See “Path Group Effects” on page 282.)
Suspend Multipath Reconnection (SMR)	As for an IBM 3490, this is effectively a non-operation as Multipath Reconnect mode for a path group is not supported.
Unassign (UNA)	No Change from the 3490E.

## Status and Sense Bytes

**Status Byte**                    The status byte provides response information regarding the current channel command word (CCW). This is the information that is contained in bits 32-39 of the System/370 channel status word (CSW) and also in the CSW formatted by the I/O Supervisor components of MVS Extended Architecture. The VTSS status byte is identical to the status byte described in the *IBM 3490 Hardware Reference*.

**Sense and Log Data Formats**                    Sense and log data record and report subsystem error and error correction information. The Sense command transfers 32 bytes of data from the control unit to the channel. If the Sense command follows a Rewind Unload command, Format 22 data is transferred. Otherwise, it is Format 20 data. Both formats contain 32 bytes of information. The Read Buffered Log command transfers 64 bytes of Format 30 buffered log data to the channel. The other formats described in the *IBM 3490 Hardware Reference* are not applicable to VTSS.

The contents of bytes 0-7 and 27-30 are common to all formats (for the 3490, it is only bytes 0-7, 27-29 that are common). The contents of the remaining bytes are determined by the format, which is reported in sense byte 7. Differences between the VTSS sense and log data and those of the 3490 and fields whose values are constant or limited for VTSS are described in the following tables.

Formats 20, 22, and  
30 Sense bytes 0-7

*Table 54. Sense bytes 0-7*

Sense Byte	Description		
0	Bits	Value	Description
	0	x	Command Reject
	1	x	Intervention Required
	2	0	Bus Out Check (FIPS only)
	3	x	Equipment Check - this bit is set for: - Control Unit ERP failure (ERA 4A) - Physical end of tape
	4	x	Data Check - VTSS detected an invalid condition in the absence of a detected hardware malfunction
	5	0	Overrun (synchronous mode only; not supported by VTSS)
	6	x	Deferred Unit Check - Unit Check not associated with current cmd
	7	x	Assigned elsewhere

Sense Byte	Description		
1	Bits	Value	Description
	0	x	Locate Failure
	1	1	Drive Online to Control Unit
	2	0	Reserved
	3	0	Record Sequence Error - not applicable to VTSS
	4	x	Beginning of Tape
	5	x	Write Mode - most recent command was a write-type command
	6	x	Write Protect
	7	0	Not Capable - not applicable to VTSS
2	Bits	Value	Description
	0-3	xxxx	Reporting Channel Path
	4	x	Reporting Control Unit
	5	0	Automatic Cartridge Loader Active - not applicable to VTSS
	6	0	Tape Synchronous Mode - not applicable to VTSS
	7	x	Tape Positioning - must be set to enable Read Opposite Recovery implementation of Read Backward command
3	Error Recovery Action (ERA)		
4	Bits	Value	Description
	0-1	01	3480-2 XF format
	2-3	00	Reserved
	4-7	xxxx	High order bits of Channel Logical Block Number - the next data block or tape mark to be read or written in a forward direction
5-6	Last 16 bits of Channel Logical Block Number		
7	Identifies format of remaining sense or log bytes: 0x20, 0x22, or 0x30		

Format 20 Sense  
Bytes 8-31

**Table 55. Format 20 - Sense bytes 8-31**

Sense Byte	Description		
8	0		
9	VTSS Extended Path Info		
	Bits	Value	Description
	0-1	0	Reserved (HPID expansion)
	2-3	00bb	ESCON adapter Host-Path number (HPID)
	4-7	0	Reserved (VDID expansion, Most Sig Bits >8)
10-11	Information for service representative - Fault Symptom Code (FSC)		
12-13	Information for service representative - Reason Code		
14-21	0		
22-23	Reserved (Iceberg compatibility FSC)		

<b>Sense Byte</b>	<b>Description</b>
24	Channel Adapter and Data-Transfer Mode Bits    Value    Description 0 -3    xxxx    Channel adapter 4-7    0xE    Data-transfer mode - ESCON 9.0 MB/s
25	Control Unit Features Installed Bits    Value    Description 0        1        Dual Control Unit Communication Coupler 1-3      0        Reserved 4        1        Improved Data Recording Capability enabled 5        0        Reserved 6        0        Upgraded Buffer 7        0        Automatic Cartridge Loader
26	Microcode EC Level - (not applicable) VTSS Sense-Bytes Revision Level (0x01)
27-29	Subsystem Configuration Bits    Value    Description 0-3    0010    Model Definition - Model A20/B40 4-23   x..x    Sequence Number (lower order 12 bits plus virtual drive id in hex)
30	Virtual tape drive identifier 0-255 (VDID)
31	0    Buffered Write Data Bytes - not applicable



## Format 22 Sense Bytes 8-31

Format 22 is presented when a Sense command follows a Rewind Unload command.

**Table 56. Format 22 Sense Bytes 8-31**

Sense Byte	Description
8	0
9	VTSS Extended Path Info Bits    Value    Description 0-1     0       Reserved (HPID expansion) 2-3     00bb    ESCON adapter Host-Path number (HPID) 4-7     0       Reserved (VDID expansion, Most Sig Bits >8)
10-11	Information for service representative - Fault Symptom Code (FSC)
12-21	0    Reserved
22-23	Reserved (Iceberg compatibility FSC)
24-26	0    Reserved
27-29	Subsystem Configuration Bits    Value    Description 0-3     0010    Model Definition - Model A20/B40 4-23    x..x    Sequence Number (lower order 12 bits plus virtual drive id in hex)
30	Virtual tape drive identifier 0-255 (VDID)
31	0    Reserved

## Format 30 Sense and Log Bytes 8-63

Format 30 is presented in response to a Read Buffered Log command.

**Table 57. Format 30 - Sense Bytes 8-31**

Log Byte	Description
8-23	0
24	Count of Data-Request Errors (Excludes Data-request Time-outs) (used to represent internal data transfer errors, i.e. CRC errors)
25	0
26	Cleaning the Tape Drives and Volume Format. Bit 0-3    0000 (no cleaning support) 4-5    00 (no tape mounted) 10 (3480-2 XF format) 6       0 (Volume format changed) 7       0 (no forced error logging active)
27-29	Subsystem Configuration Bits    Value    Description 0-3     0010    Model Definition - Model A20/B40 4-23    x..x    Sequence Number (lower order 12 bits plus virtual drive id in hex)

<b>Log Byte</b>	<b>Description</b>
30	Virtual tape drive identifier 0-255 (VDID)
31	Length of Tape Currently Mounted 0x00 Tape is unloaded 0x90 Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape

## Format 30 Log Bytes 32-63

**Table 58. Format 30 Log Bytes 32 - 63**

<b>Log Byte</b>	<b>Description</b>
For bytes 32-43, counts of bytes processed, each count is equal to 4K bytes (4096) and rounded up to the nearest 4K byte increment for blocks of less than 4K bytes. For example, a 3456-byte block of data is counted as '01', and a 5678-byte block of data is counted as '02'.	
32-34	Count of Channel Read Bytes Processed (uncompressed)
35-37	Count of Channel Write Bytes Processed (uncompressed)
38-40	Count of Device Read Bytes Processed (compressed)
41-43	Count of Device Write Bytes Processed (compressed)
44-46	Count of Channel Read Blocks (including tape marks) Processed
47-49	Count of Channel Write Blocks (including tape marks) Processed
50-52	Count of Device Read Blocks (including tape marks) Processed
53-55	Count of Device Write Blocks (including tape marks) Processed
56-63	0

## Error Recovery Action (ERA) Codes Support

Many of the Error Recovery Action (ERA) codes that are appropriate for a physical tape I/O device are not appropriate in a virtual tape device. Therefore the VTSS only supports a subset of the possible ERAs. They are identified by an X in Table 59.

**Table 59. Error Recovery Action Codes**

VTSS	Code	Description
X	00	Unsolicited Sense
	21	Data Streaming Not Operational
	22	Path Equipment Check
X	23	Read Data Check
	24	Load Display Check
	25	Write Data Check
X	26	Read Opposite
X	27	Command Reject
	28	Write ID Mark Check
X	29	Function Incompatible
	2A	Unsolicited Environmental Data
X	2B	Environmental Data Present
	2C	Permanent Equipment Check
	2D	Data Security Erase Failure
X	2E	Not Capable (BOT Error)
X	30	Write Protected
	31	Tape Void
	32	Tension Loss
	33	Load Failure
	34	Unload Failure
X	35	Drive Equipment Check
X	36	End of Data
	37	Tape Length Error
X	38	Physical End of Tape
X	39	Backward at BOT
X	3A	Drive Switched Not Ready
	3B	Manual Rewind/Rewind-Unload

<b>VTSS</b>	<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>
	40	Overrun
	41	Record Sequence Error
	42	Degraded Mode
X	43	Drive Not Ready
X	44	Locate Block Unsuccessful
X	45	Drive Assigned Elsewhere
X	46	Drive Not Online
	47	Volume Fenced
X	48	Unsolicited Informational Data
	49	Bus-Out Check
	4A	Control Unit ERP Failed
	4B	Control Unit and Drive Incompatible
	4C	Recovered Check-One Failure
X	4D	Resetting Event
X	4E	Maximum Block Size Exceeded
X	50	Read Buffered Log (Overflow)
X	51	Read Buffered Log (EOV)
X	52	End of Volume Complete
X	53	Global Command Intercept
	54	Channel Interface Recovery (Temporary)
	55	Channel Interface Recovery (Permanent)
X	56	Channel Protocol Error
X	57	Global Status Intercept
	5A	Tape Length Incompatible
	5B	3480 XF Incompatible
	5C	Format 3480-2 XF Incompatible
	5D	Tape Length Violation
	5E	Compaction Algorithm Incompatible

## Control Unit Images

### Introduction

Unlike recent prior generations of tape drives where the trend has been to “1-by-1” devices (a separate controller for each drive), the VTSS has an “N-by-N” architecture. Each Virtual Tape Unit (VTU) can be accessed from more than one Control Unit (CU), and each CU accesses multiple VTUs. This provides a high availability for every VTU due to the elimination of any single point of hardware failure or contention.

“Multiple Control Units” does not refer to multiple VTSS subsystems. Rather it refers to how an single VTSS behaves as if it were comprised of multiple CUs. It appears so for physical reasons (multiple hardware Clusters) and logical reasons (Virtual Controller images).

### Dual Control Units - DCUs

A single VTSS subsystem is comprised of two fully redundant hardware “Clusters”. Each Cluster has its own set of ESCON physical paths and can access any VTU. Since it presents the same appearance as a 3490 “Dual Control Unit” (DCU), the VTSS reports itself a “Dual Control Unit” (DCU) type in all sense data. This includes the RCD, RDC, RSSD, and SNSID commands as well as the SNS command.

The selected ESCON path determines which half of the DCU is involved in an operation. Thus the DCU number (0,1) is based on a physical construct - the ESCON physical path.

### Virtual Control Units - VCUs

Since a VTSS has so many more available data-paths and tape units than a 3490 subsystem, it cannot appear as a single “2-by-N” 3490E subsystem. An actual 3490 subsystem may have a maximum N of 16. But the VTSS supports 64 virtual tape units, which is 4 times the maximum supported by a single 3490 subsystem. The solution is have the VTSS present multiple Virtual Control Unit images (VCUs) to the host.

To support 64 VTUs the VTSS must appear as 4 separate VCUs, each controlling a range of 16 VTUs. Note that a range of VTUs is always comprised of sequential device addresses. So VTUs x40-x4F all appear to be attached to the same VCU, whereas VTUs x00, x40, x80, and xC0 appear attached to 4 distinct VCUs.

Thus the VCU number (0-3) is based on a virtual construct - the VTU device address.

### DCU versus VCU

Note that VCUs are entirely distinct from the “Dual Control Unit” construct. VCUs are virtual and dependent upon VTU device address but independent of ESCON path, whereas DCUs are physical and dependent upon ESCON path but independent of VTU device address. This means that each VCU appears to be a DCU.

In other words, while the VTU device address determines the VCU image, the ESCON path address determines which Cluster is involved, and so which half of the DCU is involved. This means that a VTSS subsystem appears to be comprised

of 8 individual CU images arranged as 4 DCUs, with each DCU controlling 16 VTUs.

Whenever an operation selects a particular ESCON path and device address, this determines which of the 8 CU images has been selected.

Note that not every Sense-type command directly reflects the VCU and DCU image. The basic SNS command data does, and so does the RCD data. The RSSD command data reflects DCU, but the RDC and SNSID commands' data does not. The VCU/DCU address information is reported directly only in the RCD data, in the Control Unit NED Tag field.

### System Reset Effects

Under ESCON, a System Reset must be addressed not just to a path, but to a particular Control Unit. As the DCU is tied to a particular path, and System Reset is issued to a specific path, DCU construct has no particular effect upon System Reset processing that deviates from a 3490 subsystem.

But VCU cuts across path-address. Each VCU must be defined to ESCON as a distinct and separate CU (because of the 16 device per 3490 CU limitation).

Hence, *to reset an ESCON path to a VTSS one must issue 4 System Resets - one to each VCU* "attached" to that path.

### Path Group Effects

The DCU construct has no effect upon path grouping. This is no different than in a 3490 subsystem. Any combination of pathing commands issues to a single VTU over multiple paths is not affected by whether or how the paths used are split across DCUs.

But the VCU construct does have an effect, and it does not map precisely to any 3490 subsystem effects.

All path management commands are addressed to a particular ESCON path and VTU. All may affect the path grouping and partitioning state of the device and/or path (or path-group). However, the effect of VCUs is noticed in the SPID and SNID commands.

### SPID Command -- Path versus Device - Deep Background

The SPID command "Establishes" or "disestablishes" a particular device-path (specific ESCON path to a specific VTU device). The "disestablish" operations have two flavors: "Resign" and "Disband". But for purposes of this discussion, the difference is irrelevant., and no distinction will be made.

The SPID command also "establishes" the *path* over which it is issued, regardless of the selected VTU device and *regardless of whether the specified operation establishes or disestablishes the selected device*. In other words, if a SPID command is sent down a "not-previously-established" ESCON path, *the path itself is always "Established"*, even if the specified operation was "Resign" or "Disband" and no device-path is established.

This behavior is explained by analyzing the SNID command. The SNID command reports both pathing status and partitioning status.

*Partitioning Status* refers to the implicit or explicit assignment state (Enabled or Disabled) for the selected device-path. It is affected directly by the ASN, UNA,

and CAC commands, and indirectly by the SPID command and System Reset. Note that it has no path-specific meaning independent of a specific device. It is *unaffected by the VCU or DCU* construct.

*Pathing Status* refers to path and path-group status for the selected path and device-path. It is affected solely by the SPID command and System Reset. It depends upon both the pathing state of the path and of the device-path, which are partially independent. The device-path can either be “Grouped” or “Ungrouped”, and in addition the path itself can also be “Reset”.

The device-path state is set to “Grouped” in response to a SPID-Establish command, and is set to “Ungrouped” in response to a SPID Resign or Disband command. The path state is set to “Reset” in response to a System Reset signal. The “Reset” status is cleared by the first subsequent SPID command (of any type) issued down this path.

When a System Reset occurs, all device-path pathing and partitioning states associated with this path are reset (cleared, forgotten). Hence the SNID issued to any device on this path will return “Reset” as its Pathing Status and zeroes as a Path-Group-ID. (Note that this is distinct from the “Resetting-Event” Unit-Check, which is returned for the first command issued to a device-path after a System Reset. The “Reset” pathing status will continue to be presented by a SNID to any device-path associated with the path until a SPID command is accepted by any device on that path. After that, a SNID to any device on that path will present either “Grouped” or “Ungrouped”.

While in “Reset” Pathing Status, a device-path can accept other commands, including ASN and UNA, which may change its Partitioning Status, but will not affect its Pathing Status.

So to summarize, a path is “established” independent of the device-paths associated with it, and this consists of clearing the path’s “Reset” Pathing Status and also in setting the path’s Path-Group-ID (both reported by SNID). Note that once a path’s Path-Group-ID has been set, any subsequent SPID command must specify the same Path-Group-ID, or it will be rejected.

## VCU Effects on SPID and SNID

The effects of VCU upon SPID and SNID are counter-intuitive from the way VCU affects System Reset processing. Basically, when a SPID is issued to a path which is in the “Reset” Pathing Status, it clears the “Reset” status and sets the Path-Group-ID for the path ***for all VCUs, regardless of the VCU to which it was addressed.*** In other words, a SPID (of any type) to *any* VCU establishes that path for *all* VCUs.

Note that this is opposite of the effect for System Reset, which only resets the path for a particular VCU.





## Appendix C. NCS/VTCS 5.1 Alphabetic Volsers

---

NCS/VTCS 5.1 and above supports alphabetic volser ranges for all commands and utilities. The rules for alphabetic volser ranges are as follows:

1. An alphabetic volser range consists of a pair of volsers (start volser and end volser) containing an incrementing alphabetic portion of 1 to 6 characters. For example: 00000A-00000Z, ABCAAA-ABCZZZ, 9AA000-9CC000, A00A00-A00M00.
  - a. A volser is composed of sequence of one to six numerics, (upper case) alphabetic or national characters (#, @ and the primary national currency symbol).
  - b. A volser of less than six characters is left justified and blank padded. Each volser element in a range must have the same number of characters specified. For example, if the first volser element is 4 characters, the second must be exactly 4 characters.
2. The start and end volsers forming a volser range consists of the following sub-elements: an optional prefix, an incremental portion, and an optional suffix. Table 63. on page 288 shows examples of alphabetic volser ranges.
  - a. The optional prefix consists of identical leading characters (if any) in the start and end volsers.
  - b. The incremental portion starts at the first non-identical leading character in the start and end volsers forming a range. The incremental portion is either:
    - All numeric (contains characters 0 through 9 only).
    - All alphabetic (contains character A through Z only).

The incremental portion of a volser range, therefore, terminates where a change of character type (numeric -> alphabetic or alphabetic -> numeric) is detected.

The incremental type is derived from the character type of the first character in the incremental part (numeric/alphabetic). Table 60 shows example incremental ranges.

**Table 60. Example Incremental Ranges**

<b>volser Range</b>	<b>Incremental Portion</b>	<b>Data Type</b>
00000A-00000Z	A-Z	Character
ABC AAA-ABC ZZZ	AAA-ZZZ	Character
9AAZ00-9CCZ00	AAZ-CCZ	Character
A00B00-A99B00	00-99	Numeric
A00A00-A00M00	A-M	Character
A00B00-A00B99	00-99	Numeric

Note the following rules for incremental ranges:

- The expansion of an alphabetic incremental part is derived from a collating sequence of A-Z (it will not include the national character set).
  - The data types of the incremental portions in the start and end volsers must be identical.
  - The position of the incremental portion of the start volser must match that of the end volser.
  - The length of the incremental portion of the start and end volsers must be identical.
  - The incremental portion of the end volser must be greater than or equal to the start volser.
- c. The optional suffix consists of the trailing characters from the end of the incremental portion onwards. Table 61 shows an example range suffix.

**Table 61. Example Range Suffix**

<b>Volser Range</b>	<b>Incremental Portion</b>	<b>Suffix</b>
A00B00-A00B99	00-99	none
A00B@0-A00D@0	B-D	@0
9AAZ00-9CCZ00	AAZ-CCZ	00 (not Z00)
900A@A-950A@A	900-950	A@A
ABC AAA-ABC ZZZ	AAA-ZZZ	none

For a range to be valid the suffix of the start and end volsers forming the range must be identical.

3. The number of volumes generated from an alphabetic volser range is dependent on the number of elements in the incremental portion of the volser elements. For an A to Z range in each character position, the number of volumes can be calculated by 26 to the power of the number of positions that are being incremented as shown in Table 62.

**Table 62. Size of Alphabetic Volser Ranges**

Range	Calculation	Number of Volumes
A-Z	$26^1$	26
AA-ZZ	$26^2$	676
AAA-ZZZ	$26^3$	17,576
AAAA-ZZZZ	$26^4$	456,976



**Warning:** Per Table 62, it is possible to define  $26^4$  VTVs in a single range. **Note, however, that** the more VTVs you define, the bigger your CDS has to be.

## Alphabetic Volser Examples

Table 63 and Table 64. on page 289 describe valid and invalid alphabetic ranges.

**Table 63. Valid Alphabetic Ranges**

Range	Subcomponents			Number of VTVs
	Prefix	Incremental Portion	Suffix	
AAA000-AAZ000		AAA-AAZ	000	26
A00A00-A00A99	A00A	00-99		100
0AAAA0-0ZZZZ0	0	AAAA-ZZZZ	0	456,976
A00A00-A99A00	A	00-99	A00	100
99AA##-99ZZ##	99	AA-ZZ	##	676
A9A000-A9Z000	A9	A-Z	000	26
#####-#####	#####			1
AA00##-ZZ00##		AA-ZZ	00##	676
AA00##-AA99##	AA	00-99	##	100
PROD00-PROD99	PROD	00-99		100
PROD00-PROZ00	PRO	D-Z	00	23
A4Z#@0-A9Z#@0	A	4-9	Z#@0	6
A4Z#@0-Z4Z#@0		A-Z	4Z#@0	26
A4Z#@0-A4Z#@6	A4Z#@	0-6		7
AAAAAA-AAACCC		AAAAAA-AAACCC		1407
A3BZZ9-A3CDE9	A3	BZZ-CDE	9	84
999AM8-999CM8	999	AM-CM	8	53
111AAA-111ZZZ	111	AAA-ZZZ		17576

**Table 64. Invalid Alphabetic Ranges**

Range	Subcomponents			Number of VTVs	Comments
	Prefix	Incremental Portion	Suffix		
0AAAAA-0BAAAA	0	AAAAA-BAAAA		456,977	Greater than 456,976 VTVs
A9A000-A9Z999					Cannot mix incremental portions
#####-#####@					National characters cannot increment
AA00##-ZZ99##					Invalid range
CCNNZZ-CDNZAA		CCNNZZ-CDNZAA		464,414	Greater than 456,976 VTVs
A4Z#@0-A9Z#@9					Invalid range



# Glossary

---

## A

**access method** A technique for moving data between processor storage and input/output devices.

**ACS** *See* Automated Cartridge System.

**ACSid** A method used to identify an ACS. An ACSid is the result of defining the SLIALIST macro during the library generation (LIBGEN) process. The first ACS listed in this macro acquires a hexadecimal identifier of 00, the second ACS listed acquires a hexadecimal identifier of 01, and so forth, until all ACSs are identified.

**ACS routine** An SMS term, referring to automatic class selection routine. Not to be confused with the HSC term, ACS, referring to automatic cartridge system.

**AMT** automatic migration threshold.

**APF** Authorized Program Facility.

**APPL** VTAM APPLID definition for the HSC.

**archiving** The storage of backup files and associated journals, usually for a given period of time.

**audit** A VSM audit (which is not the same as an HSC audit) reconstructs VTV and MVC information.

**Automated Cartridge System (ACS)** The library subsystem consisting of one or two LMUs, and from 1 to 16 attached LSMs.

**automated library** *See* library.

**automatic mode** A relationship between an LSM and all attached hosts. LSMs operating in automatic mode handle cartridges without operator intervention. This is the normal operating mode of an LSM that has been modified online.

**automatic migration** Migrating VTVs to MVCs that is automatically initiated and controlled by VSM.

**automatic migration threshold (AMT)** AMT values are percentage values that determine when

virtual tape volume migration begins and ends. VTV migration begins when the VTSS buffer reaches the high AMT and ends when the buffer reaches or falls below the low AMT. These thresholds apply to all VTSSs.

**automatic recall** Recalling VTVs to the VTSS that is automatically initiated and controlled by VSM.

**automatic reclaim** Reclaiming MVC space that is automatically initiated and controlled by VSM.

## B

**block** A collection of contiguous records recorded as a unit. Blocks are separated by interblock gaps, and each block may contain one or more records.

**buffer** A routine or storage used to compensate for a difference in rate of data flow, or time of occurrence of events, when transferring data from one device to another.

## C

**CA-1 (TMS)** Computer Associates Tape Management System. Third-party software by Computer Associates International, Inc.

**CAP** *See* Cartridge Access Port.

**capacity** *See* media capacity.

**CAPid** A CAPid uniquely defines the location of a CAP by the LSM on which it resides. A CAPid is of the form AAL:CC where AA is the ACSid, L is the LSM number, and CC is the CAP number. Some commands and utilities permit an abbreviated CAPid format of AAL.

**cartridge** The plastic housing around the tape. It is approximately 4 inches (100 mm) by 5 inches (125 mm) by 1 inch (25 mm). The tape is threaded automatically when loaded in a transport. A plastic leader block is attached to the tape for automatic threading. The spine of the cartridge contains a Tri-Optic label listing the VOLSER (tape volume identifier).

**Cartridge Access Port (CAP)** An assembly which allows an operator to enter/eject cartridges during automated operations. The CAP is located on the access door of an LSM. (*see also*, standard CAP, enhanced CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP.)

**Cartridge Scratch Loader** An optional feature for the Cartridge Drive. It allows the automatic loading of premounted tape cartridges or the manual loading of single tape cartridges.

**cartridge system tape** The basic tape cartridge media that is used with 4480, 4490, or 9490 Cartridge Subsystems. They are visually identified by a one-color cartridge case.

**CAW** *See* Channel Address Word.

**CDRM** Cross Domain Resource Manager definition (if not using existing CDRMs).

**CDRSC** Cross Domain Resource definition.

**CDS** *See* control data set.

**CE** Channel End.

**cell** A storage slot in the LSM that is used to store a tape cartridge.

**Central Support Remote Center (CSRC)** *See* Remote Diagnostics Center.

**CFT** Customer field test.

**channel** A device that connects the host and main storage with the input and output control units.

**Channel Address Word (CAW)** An area in storage that specifies the location in main storage at which a channel program begins.

**channel command** A command received by a CU from a channel.

**Channel Status Word (CSW)** An area in storage that provides information about the termination of input/output operations.

**check** Detection of an error condition.

**CI** Converter/Interpreter (JES3).

**Clink (cluster link).** The path between a primary VTSS and secondary VTSS in a cluster. The Clink path is used to copy replicate VTVs from the primary to the secondary.

**Cluster.** Two VTSSs which are physically cabled together by Clink paths and are defined in CONFIG as a cluster. A cluster consists of a primary and a secondary VTSS. VTVs with the replicate attribute attached will be copied from the primary to the secondary as soon as possible after dismount time.

**connected mode** A relationship between a host and an ACS. In this mode, the host and an ACS are capable of communicating (at least one station to this ACS is online).

**control data set (CDS)** The HSC database. In addition to the current information in the CDS, VSM keeps all its persistent data in the CDS as well.

**control data set allocation map** A CDS subfile that marks individual blocks as used or free.

**control data set data blocks** CDS blocks that contain information about the library and its configuration or environment.

**control data set directory** A part of the CDS that maps its subdivision into subfiles.

**control data set pointer blocks** CDS blocks that contain pointers to map data blocks belonging to a subfile.

**control data set recovery area** A portion of the CDS reserved for maintaining integrity for updates that affect multiple CDS blocks.

**control data set subfile** A portion of the CDS consisting of Data Blocks and Pointer Blocks containing related information.

**Control Unit (CU)** A microprocessor-based unit situated logically between a host channel (or channels) and from two to sixteen tape transports. It functions to translate channel commands into tape transport commands, send transport status to the channel(s), and pass data between the channel(s) and transport(s).

**conventional Nearline transport** An HSC-controlled transport that is not defined to VSM as an RTD.



**cross-host recovery** The ability for one host to perform recovery for another host that has failed.

**CSE** Customer Service Engineer.

**CSI** Consolidated System Inventory.

**CSL** Cartridge Scratch Loader.

**CSRC** Central Support Remote Center (*See* Remote Diagnostics Center)

**CSW** Channel Status Word.

**CU** *See* Control Unit.

## D

**DAE** Dump Analysis Elimination.

**DASD** Direct access storage device.

**data** Any representations such as characters or analog quantities to which meaning is, or might be, assigned.

**data class** A collection of allocation and space attributes, defined by the storage administrator, that are used to create a data set.

**data compaction** An algorithmic data-reduction technique that encodes data from the host and stores it in less space than unencoded data. The original data is recovered by an inverse process call decompaction.

**data-compaction ratio** The number of host data bytes divided by the number of encoded bytes. It is variable depending on the characteristics of the data being processed. The more random the data stream, the lower the opportunity to achieve compaction.

**Data Control Block (DCB)** A control block used by access routines in storing and retrieving data.

**data set** The major unit of data storage and retrieval, consisting of a collection of data in one of several prescribed arrangements and described by control information to which the system has access.

**data streaming** A continuous stream of data being transmitted in character or binary-digit form, using a specified format.

**DBU** disk buffer utilization.

**DCB** Data Control Block.

**demand allocation** An MVS term meaning that a user has requested a specific unit.

**demand migration** Migrating VTVs to MVCs that an administrator does with the MIGRATE command or utility.

**demand recall** Recalling VTVs to the VTSS that an administrator does with the RECALL command or utility.

**demand reclaim** Reclaiming MVC space that an administrator does with the RECLAIM command or utility.

**device number** A four-digit hexadecimal number that uniquely identifies a device attached to a processor.

**device separation** The HSC function which *forces* the MVS device selection process to choose either a nonlibrary transport or a transport in a particular ACS, based on the location of the volume (specific requests) or the given subpool rules in effect (nonspecific request).

**DFP** Data Facility Product. A program that isolates applications from storage devices, storage management, and storage device hierarchy management.

**DFSMS** Refers to an environment running MVS/ESA SP and DFSMS/MVS, DFSORT, and RACF. This environment helps automate and centralize the management of storage through a combination of hardware, software, and policies.

**DFSMS ACS routine** A sequence of instructions for having the system assign data class, storage class, management class, and storage group for a data set.

**directed allocation** The HSC function of *influencing* MVS's selection of library transports. For a specific request, the HSC influences MVS to choose a transport requiring the fewest number of pass-thrus; for a nonspecific (scratch) request, HSC's influencing is based on the given subpool rules in effect.

**disconnected mode** A relationship between a host and an ACS. In this mode, the host and an ACS are

not capable of communicating (there are no online stations to this ACS).

**disk buffer utilization (DBU).** The ratio of used to total VTSS buffer capacity.

**DOMed** Pertaining to a console message that was previously highlighted during execution, but is now at normal intensity.

**drain** The deletion of data from an MVC. May be accompanied by a “virtual” eject to prevent the MVC from being reused.

**drive loaded** A condition of a tape drive in which a tape cartridge has been inserted in the drive, and the tape has been threaded to the beginning-of-tape position.

**DSI** Dynamic System Interchange (JES3).

**dual LMU** A hardware/u–software feature that provides a redundant LMU capability.

**dual LMU** HSC release 1.1.0 or later that automates a switchover to the standby LMU in a dual LMU configuration.

**dump** To write the contents of storage, or of a part of storage, usually from an internal storage to an external medium, for a specific purpose such as to allow other use of storage, as a safeguard against faults or errors, or in connection with debugging.

**Dynamic Device Reconfiguration (DDR)** A facility that allows a demountable volume to be moved, and repositioned if necessary, without abnormally terminating the job or repeating the initial program load procedure.

## E

**Ecart** Cartridge system tape with a length of 1100 feet that can be used with 4490 cartridge drives. These tapes are visually identified by a two-tone colored case.

**EDL** See eligible device list.

**eligible device list** A group of tape drives that are available to satisfy an allocation request.

**enhanced CAP** An enhanced CAP contains two forty-cell magazine-style CAPs and a one-cell priority CAP (PCAP). Each forty-cell CAP holds

four removable magazines of ten cells each. An LSM access door with an enhanced CAP contains no cell locations for storing cartridges. An enhanced CAP is ordered as Feature Number CC80. (*see also*, Cartridge Access Port (CAP), standard CAP, WolfCreek CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP.)

**Effective Recording Density** The number of user bytes per unit of length of the recording medium.

**eject** The LSM robot places a cartridge in a Cartridge Access Port (CAP) so the operator can remove it from the LSM.

**ExPR** Expert Performance Reporter.

**Expert Performance Reporter** Expert Performance Reporter collects performance data and generates reports about StorageTek Nearline ACSs and VTSS status and performance. It has an MVS component and a PC component.

**Enhanced Capacity Cartridge System Tape** Cartridge system tape with increased capacity that can be used with 4490 and 9490 Cartridge Drives. These tapes are visually identified by a two-tone colored case.

**EOT** End-of-Tape marker.

**EPO** Emergency Power Off.

**ERDS** Error Recording Data Set.

**EREP** Environmental Recording, Editing, Printing.

**ERP** Error recovery procedures.

**error recovery procedures (ERP)** Procedures designed to help isolate and, where possible, to recover from errors in equipment.

**ExtendedStore Library** One or more LSMs with no cartridge drives (CDs) that are attached by pass-thru ports to other LSMs (with CDs) in an ACS. These LSMs provide archive storage for cartridges containing less active data sets. Cartridges can be entered and ejected directly into and out of this LSM though either a standard CAP or an enhanced CAP.

## F

**file protected** Pertaining to a tape volume from which data can be read only. Data cannot be written on or erased from the tape.

**format** The arrangement or layout of data on a data medium.

## G

**GB** 1,073,741,824 bytes of storage.

**GDG Generation Data Group.** An MVS data set naming convention. Sequence numbers are appended to the basic data set name to track the generations created for that data set.

**GTF Generalized Trace Facility.** An MVS facility used to trace software functions and events.

## H

**HDA** Head/disk assembly.

**Host Software Component (HSC)** That portion of the Automated Cartridge System which executes on host systems attached to an automated library. This component acts as the interface between the operating system and the rest of the automated library.

**host system** A data processing system that is used to prepare programs and the operating environments for use on another computer or controller.

**HSC** Host Software Component.

**HSM** Hierarchical Storage Manager.

**HWS** High Watermark Setup. Relates to chains set up for tape transport allocation in JES3.

## I

**ICRC** See Improved Cartridge Recording Capability.

**Improved Cartridge Recording Capability (ICRC)** An improved data recording mode that, when enabled, can increase the effective cartridge data capacity and the effective data rate when invoked.

**ID** Identifier or identification.

**IDAX Interpreter Dynamic Allocation Exit.** This is a subfunction of the DFSMS/MVS subsystem request (SSREQ 55) that the MVS JCL Interpreter and dynamic allocation functions issue for calling

DFSMS ACS routines for management of the data set requested.

**IML** See Initial Microprogram Load.

**index** a function performed by the cartridge loader that moves cartridges down the input or output stack one cartridge position. A loader can perform multiple consecutive indexes.

**Initial Microprogram Load (IML)** A process that activates a machine reset and loads system programs to prepare a computer system for operation. Processors having diagnostic programs activate these programs at IML execution. Devices running u–software reload the functional u–software usually from a floppy diskette at IML execution.

**Initial Program Load (IPL)** A process that activates a machine reset and loads system programs to prepare a computer system for operation. Processors having diagnostic programs activate these programs at IPL execution. Devices running u–software reload the functional u–software usually from a floppy diskette at IPL execution.

**initial value** A value assumed until explicitly changed. It must then be explicitly specified in another command to restore the initial value. An initial value for the HSC is the value in effect when the product is installed.

**inline diagnostics** Diagnostic routines that test subsystem components while operating on a time–sharing basis with the functional u–software in the subsystem component.

**input stack** The part of the cartridge loader where cartridges are premounted.

**intervention required** Manual action is needed.

**ips** Inches per second.

**IVP Installation Verification Programs.** A package of programs that is run by a user after the library is installed in order to verify that the library is functioning properly.

## J

**JCL** See Job Control Language.

**Job Control Language** Problem-oriented language designed to express statements in a job that are used to identify the job or describe its requirements to an operating system.

**journal** The log associated with journaling. The log (stored in a data set) contains a record of completed work and changes to the control data set since the last backup was created.

**journaling** A technique for recovery that involves creating a backup control data set and maintaining a log of all changes (transactions) to that data set.

## K

**KB** Kilobyte, thousand bytes, or 1024 bytes.

**kb** kilobit, or thousand bits ( $10^3$  bits).

**keyword parameter** In command and utility syntax, operands that include keywords and their related values (*see* “positional parameter”). Values are concatenated to the keyword either by an equal sign, “KEYWORD=value,” or by parentheses, “KEYWORD(value).” Keyword parameters can be specified in any order. The HSC accepts (tolerates) multiple occurrences of a keyword. The value assigned to a keyword reflects the last occurrence of a keyword within a command.

## L

**LAN** Local Area Network.

**LCU** *See* Library Control Unit.

**LED** *See* Light Emitting Diode.

**LIBGEN** The process of defining the configuration of the automated library to the host software.

**library** An installation of one or more ACSs, attached cartridge drives, volumes placed into the ACSs, host software that controls and manages the ACSs and associated volumes, and the library control data set that describes the state of the ACSs.

**library control data set** *See* control data set.

**Library Control Unit (LCU)** The portion of the LSM that controls the picking, mounting, dismounting, and replacing of cartridges.

**Light Emitting Diode (LED)** An electronic device used mainly as an indicator on status panels to show equipment on/off conditions.

**LMU** Library Management Unit. The portion of the ACS that manages from one to sixteen LSMs and communicates with the host CPU.

**loader** *See* Cartridge Scratch Loader.

**load point** The beginning of the recording area on magnetic tape.

**Local Area Network (LAN)** A computer network in which devices within the network can access each other for data transmission purposes. The LMU and attached LCUs are connected with a local area network.

**logical ejection** The process of removing a volume from the control data set without physically ejecting it from its LSM location.

**LSM Library Storage Module.** Provides the storage area for cartridges plus the robot necessary to move the cartridges. The term LSM often means the LCU and LSM combined.

**LSMid** An LSMid is composed of the ACSid concatenated with the LSM number.

**LSM number** A method used to identify an LSM. An LSM number is the result of defining the SLIACS macro LSM parameter during a LIBGEN. The first LSM listed in this parameter acquires the LSM number of 0 (hexadecimal), the second LSM listed acquires a hexadecimal number of 1, and so forth, until all LSMs are identified (maximum of sixteen or hexadecimal F).

## M

**machine initiated maintenance** *See* ServiceTek.

**magnetic recording** A technique of storing data by selectively magnetizing portions of a magnetizable material.

**magnetic tape** A tape with a magnetizable surface layer on which data can be stored by magnetic recording.

**magnetic tape drive** A mechanism for moving magnetic tape and controlling its movement.

**maintenance facility** Hardware contained in the CU and LMU that allows a CSE and the RDC to run diagnostics, retrieve status, and communicate with respective units through their control panels.

**management class** A collection of management attributes, assigned by the storage administrator, that are used to control the allocation and use of space by a data set. Note that SMS Management Classes are different from VSM Management Classes.

**manual mode** A relationship between an LSM and all attached hosts. LSMs operating in manual mode have been modified offline and require human assistance to perform cartridge operations.

**master LMU** The LMU currently controlling the functional work of the ACS in a dual LMU configuration.

**MDS** Main Device Scheduler (JES3).

**media capacity** The amount of data that can be contained on storage media and expressed in bytes of data.

**micro–software** See *v–software* under Symbols.

**migration** The movement of VTVs from the VTSS to the RTD where the VTVs are stacked onto MVCs. See *automatic migration* and *demand migration*.

**MIM Multi–Image Manager.** Third–party software by CA Corporation.

**mixed configurations** Installations containing cartridge drives under ACS control and cartridge drives outside of library control. These configurations cause the Host Software Component to alter allocation to one or the other.

**modem Modulator/demodulator.** An electronic device that converts computer digital data to analog data for transmission over a telecommunications line (telephone line). At the receiving end, the modem performs the inverse function.

**monitor** A device that observes, records, and verifies selected system activities to determine significant departure from expected operation.

**Multi-Volume Cartridge (MVC)** A physical tape cartridge residing in an LSM that either contains migrated virtual tape volumes (VTVs) or is identified as a volume that can be selected for VTV stacking.

**MVCPool Statement** An HSC control statement that is contained in the definition data set specified by the VT MVCDEF command. An MVCPool statement specifies the MVCs that VTCS uses.

**MVCDEF** An HSC command that is used to load the definition data set that contains MVCPool statements.

## N

## O

**output stack** The part of the cartridge loader that receives and holds processed cartridges.

## P

**paired–CAP mode** The two forty–cell CAPs in an enhanced CAP function in paired–CAP mode as a single eighty–cell CAP.

**PARMLIB control statements** Parameter library (PARMLIB) control statements allow you statically specify various operation parameters which take effect at HSC initialization. Identifying your system requirements and then specifying the appropriate control statements permits you to customize the HSC to your data center.

**Pass–Thru Port (PTP)** A mechanism that allows a cartridge to be passed from one LSM to another in a multiple LSM ACS.

**physical end of tape** A point on the tape beyond which the tape is not permitted to move.

**positional parameter** In command and utility syntax, operands that are identified by their position in the command string rather than by keywords (*see* “keyword parameter”). Positional parameters must be entered in the order shown in the syntax diagram.

**POST** *See* Program for Online System Testing.

**PowderHorn** A high–performance LSM (model number 9310) featuring a high–speed robot. The PowderHorn has a capacity of up to approximately 6000 cartridges.

**Primary.** One of two VTSSs in a cluster which is designated in CONFIG as the primary. During normal operations the primary services the host workload and copies replicate VTVs to the secondary.

**Program for Online System Testing (POST)** A program in a host computer that allows it to test an attached subsystem while the subsystem is online.

**Program Temporary Fix** A unit of corrective maintenance delivered to a customer to repair a

defect in a product, or a means of packaging a Small Programming Enhancement (SPE).

**Program Update Tape** A tape containing a collection of PTFs. PUTs are shipped to customers on a regular basis under the conditions of the customer’s maintenance license.

**PTF** *See* Program Temporary Fix.

**PTP** *See* pass–thru port.

**PUT** *See* Program Update Tape.

## R

**RACF** *See* Resource Access Control Facility.

**Real Tape Drive (RTD)** The physical transport attached to the LSM. The transport has a data path to a VTSS and may optionally have a data path to MVS or to another VTSS.

**RDC** *See* Remote Diagnostic Center.

**recall** The movement of VTVs from the MVC back to the VTSS. May be automatic or on demand.

**reclaim** Refers to MVC space reclamation. For automatic and demand reclamation, VTCS uses the amount of fragmented free space on the MVC and the amount of VTV data that would have to be moved to determine if space reclamation is justified.

**Reconciliation.** An automatic process initiated when a cluster is reestablished after the primary or secondary has been offline. Reconciliation ensures that the contents of the primary and secondary are identical with respect to replicate VTVs.

**Recording Density** The number of bits in a single linear track measured per unit of length of the recording medium.

**Remote Diagnostic Center (RDC)** The Remote Diagnostic Center at StorageTek. RDC operators can access and test StorageTek systems and software, through telecommunications lines, from remote customer installations. Also referred to as the Central Support Remote Center (CSRC).

**Replication.** Copying a replicate VTV from the primary VTSS to the secondary VTSS in a cluster. When replication completes, there are two copies of

the VTV, one in the primary and one in the secondary.

**Replicate VTV.** A VTV which has had the replicate attribute attached to it by a management class statement.

**Resource Access Control Facility (RACF)**  
Security software controlling access to data sets.

**RTD** *See* real tape drive.

## S

**SCP** *See* System Control Program.

**scratch tape subpool** A defined subset of all scratch tapes. Subpools are composed of one or more ranges of VOLSERs with similar physical characteristics (type of volume {reel or cartridge}, reel size, length, physical location, etc.). Some installations may also subdivide their scratch pools by other characteristics, such as label type (AL, SL, NSL, NL). The purpose of subpooling is to ensure that certain data sets are built only within particular ranges of volumes (for whatever reason the user desires). If a volume which does not belong to the required subpool is mounted for a particular data set, it is dismounted and the mount reissued.

**Secondary.** One of two VTSSs in a cluster which is designated in CONFIG as the secondary. During normal operations the secondary receives copies of replicate VTVs, stores them, and makes a migration copy on an MVC as soon as possible.

**secondary recording** A technique for recovery involving maintaining both a control data set and a copy (secondary) of the control data set.

**SER** Software Enhancement Request.

**ServiceTek** (machine initiated maintenance) A unique feature of the ACS in which an expert system monitors conditions and performance of subsystems and requests operator attention before a potential problem impacts operations. Customers can set maintenance threshold levels.

**servo** A device that uses feedback from a sensing element to control mechanical motion.

**Small Programming Enhancement (SPE)** A supplement to a released program that can affect several products or components.

**SMF System Management Facility.** An MVS facility used to record system actions which affect system functionality.

**SMP** System Modification Program.

**SMP/E** System Modification Program Extended.

**SMS** System Managed Storage.

**SPE** Small Programming Enhancement.

**standard CAP** A standard CAP has a capacity of twenty-one cartridges (three rows of seven cells each). An LSM access door with a standard CAP contains cell locations for storing cartridges. (*see also*, Cartridge Access Port (CAP), enhanced CAP.)

**standard LSM** A model 4410 LSM which has a storage capacity of up to approximately 6000 cartridges.

**standby** The status of a station that has been varied online but is connected to the standby LMU of a dual LMU ACS.

**standby LMU** The redundant LMU in a dual LMU configuration that is ready to take over in case of a master LMU failure or when the operator issues the SWitch command.

**station** A hardware path between the host computer and an LMU over which the HSC and LMU send control information.

**storage class** A named list of storage attributes that identify performance goals and availability requirements for a data set. Note that SMS Storage Classes are different from VSM Storage Classes.

**storage group** A collection of storage volumes and attributes defined by the storage administrator. Note that this is an SMS concept, not a VSM concept.

**switchover** The assumption of master LMU functionality by the standby LMU.

**System Control Program** The general term to describe a program which controls access to system resources, and allocates those resources among executing tasks.

**system-managed storage** Storage that is managed by the Storage Management Subsystem, which attempts to deliver required services for availability, performance, space, and security applications.

**System Modification Program Extended** An IBM-licensed program used to install software and software maintenance.

## T

**tape cartridge** A container holding magnetic tape that can be processed without separating it from the container.

**tape drive** A device that is used for moving magnetic tape and includes the mechanisms for writing and reading data to and from the tape.

**TAPEREQ** An HSC control statement that is contained in the definition data set specified by the TREQDEF command. A TAPEREQ statement defines a specific tape request. It is divided into two parts, the input: job name, step name, program name, data set name, expiration date or retention period, and an indication for specific requests or nonspecific (scratch) requests; and the output: media type and recording technique capabilities. You can use TAPEREQ statements to direct data sets to VSM.

**tape unit** A device that contains tape drives and their associated power supplies and electronics.

**Timberwolf (9740) LSM** A high performance LSM that provides a storage capacity of up to 494 cartridges. Up to 10 drives (STD, 4490, 9490, 9490EE, 9840, and SD-3) can be configured. Timberwolf LSMs can only attach to other Timberwolves.

**TMS** Tape Management System.

**TP** Tape-to-Print.

**transaction** A short series of actions with the control data set. These actions are usually related to a specific function (e.g., Mount, ENter).

**transport** An electromechanical device capable of threading tape from a cartridge, moving the tape across a read/write head, and writing data onto or reading data from the tape.

**TREQDEF** An HSC command that is used to load the definition data set that contains TAPEREQ control statements.

**Tri-Optic label** An external label attached to the spine of a cartridge that is both human and machine readable.

**TT** Tape-to-Tape.

## U

**UNITATTR** An HSC control statement that is contained in the definition data set specified by the UNITDEF command. A UNITATTR statement defines to the HSC the transport's media type and recording technique capabilities. For VSM, the UNITATTR statements define the VTD addresses to VSM as virtual and associate them with a VTSS.

**UNITDEF** An HSC command that is used to load the definition data set that contains UNITATTR control statements.

**utilities** Utility programs. The programs that allow an operator to manage the resources of the library and to monitor overall library performance.

## V

**Virtual Storage Manager (VSM)** A storage solution that virtualizes volumes and transports in a VTSS buffer in order to improve media and transport use. The hardware includes VTSS, which is the DASD buffer, and RTDs. The software includes VTCS, an HSC-based host software, and VTSS microcode.

**Virtual Tape Control System (VTCS)** The primary host code that controls activity and information about VTSSs, VTVs, RTDs, and MVCs.

**Virtual Tape Drive (VTD)** An emulation of a physical transport in the VTSS that looks like a physical tape transport to MVS. The data written to a VTD is really being written to DASD. The VTSS has 64 VTDs that do virtual mounts of VTVs.

**Virtual Tape Storage Subsystem (VTSS)** The DASD buffer containing virtual volumes (VTVs) and virtual drives (VTDs). The VTSS is a STK RAID 6 hardware device with microcode that enables transport emulation. The RAID device can



read and write “tape” data from/to disk, and can read and write the data from/to an RTD.

**Virtual Tape Volume (VTV)** A portion of the DASD buffer that appears to the operating system as a real tape volume. Data is written to and read from the VTV, and the VTV can be migrated to and recalled from real tape.

**virtual thumbwheel** An HSC feature that allows read-only access to a volume that is not physically write-protected.

**VOLATTR** An HSC control statement that is contained in the definition data set specified by the VOLDEF command. A VOLATTR statement defines to the HSC the media type and recording technique of the specified volumes. For VSM, the VOLATTR statements define the volsers for volumes that will be used as MVCs.

**VOLDEF** An HSC command that is used to load the definition data set that contains VOLATTR control statements.

**VOLSER** A six-character alphanumeric label used to identify a tape volume.

**volume** A data carrier that is mounted or demounted as a unit. (*See* cartridge).

**VSM** *See* Virtual Storage Manager.

**VTCS** *See* Virtual Tape Control System.

**VTD** *See* virtual tape drive.

## W

**WolfCreek** A smaller capacity high-performance LSM. WolfCreek LSMs are available in 500, 750, and 1000 cartridge capacities (model numbers 9360-050, 9360-075, and 9360-100 respectively). WolfCreek LSMs can be connected by pass-thru ports to 4410, 9310, or other WolfCreek LSMs.

**WolfCreek CAP** The standard WolfCreek CAP contains a 20-cell magazine-style CAP and a priority CAP (PCAP). (*see also*, Cartridge Access Port (CAP), Enhanced CAP, standard CAP, WolfCreek optional CAP.)

**WolfCreek optional CAP** The WolfCreek optional CAP contains a 30-cell magazine-style CAP which

is added to the standard WolfCreek CAP. (*see also*, Cartridge Access Port (CAP), Enhanced CAP, standard CAP, WolfCreek CAP.)

**Write Tape Mark (WTM)** The operation performed to record a special magnetic mark on tape. The mark identifies a specific location on the tape.

**WTM** *See* Write Tape Mark.

**WTO** Write-to-Operator.

**WTOR** Write-to-Operator with reply.

## Symbols

υ **-software.** Microprogram. A sequence of microinstructions used to perform preplanned functions and implement machine instructions.

## Numerics

**4410 LSM** *See* standard LSM.

**9310 LSM** *See* Powderhorn LSM.

**9360 LSM** *See* Wolfcreek *LSM*.

**9490 Cartridge Subsystem** Cartridge tape transports that provide read/write capability for 36-track recording format and extended capacity tape and provide improved performance over the 4490 Cartridge Subsystem. 9490 transports can also read data recorded in 18-track format. The StorageTek 9490 Cartridge Subsystem offers better performance (faster data transfer rate, faster load/unload) than a 3490E device.

**9490EE Cartridge Subsystem** A high performance tape transport that provides read/write capability for Extended Enhanced (EEtape) cartridges. It is functionally equivalent to the IBM 3490E device.

**9740 LSM** *See* Timberwolf *LSM*.

**9840 Cartridge Subsystem** A high performance tape transport system for Enterprise and Open Systems environments that reads and writes 9840 cartridges. 9840s can be defined in 10-drive and 20-drive panel configurations. The 9840 can perform as a stand-alone subsystem with a cartridge scratch loader installed, or it can be attached to a StorageTek ACS.

# Index

---

## A

AUDIT utility, 4

## B

Batch Application Program Interface (API)  
     SLUVC DAT, Flat File Static Configuration Data  
     DSECT, 206

## C

CONFIG utility, 12  
 CONSolid utility, 32  
 consolidating VTVs  
     procedures, 33  
 Control statements  
     VOLATTR, 202, 212, 213, 215

## D

DECOM utility, 70  
 DEFER, 224  
 Display command, 167, 168

## E

ExLM  
     VTV flat file format, 157  
 ExPR  
     VTV flat file format, 157

## H

HSC  
     ALLOC command enhancements, 204, 231  
     enhancements for VSM  
         Display command, 167, 168  
         MERGEcds utility, 169  
         MGMTclas control statement, 177  
         MGMTDEF command, 185  
         MVCPool control statement, 188  
         overview, 165  
         programmatic interface, 204  
         TAPERREQ control statement, 194

UNITATTR control statement, 200  
 user exits, 205

SMF records for VSM, 233

HSC (Host Software Component)

operator commands

Mount, 187

HSC enhancements for VSM

ALLOC command, 204, 231

programmatic interface enhancements, 230

VOLATTR control statement, 202, 212, 213, 215

## J

JES2 environment  
     ALLOC command, 204, 231  
     user exit SLSUX02, 205  
 JES3 environment  
     ALLOC command, 204, 231  
     user exit SLSUX04, 205

## M

Management Class  
     consolidating VTVs by specifying, 34  
 mapping macros  
     SLUVC DAT, Flat File Static Configuration Data  
     DSECT, 206  
 MEDia  
     parameter for VOLATTR, 203  
 MERGEcds utility, 169  
 MGMTclas control statement, 177  
 MGMTDEF command, 185  
 MVCPool control statement, 188  
 MVC RPT utility, 72, 76, 78, 81, 93, 99, 106, 151  
 MVCs  
     space reclamation  
         VT REClaim command, 121  
     VT QUery command, 54, 55, 58

## O

Operational Changes to the MVS/CSC  
     Startup Parameter Changes, 224  
     DEFER, 224

## P

### Parameters

VOLATTR control statement, 202, 212, 213, 215

### parameters

threshold-value, 212

## R

### recalling VTVs

VT RECALL command, 118, 119

### recovery utility, 125

### RECtech

parameter for VOLATTR, 203

### reports

MVCRPT utility, 72, 76, 78, 81, 93, 99, 106, 151

VTV report utility, 156

### RTDs

VT Vary RTD command, 142, 144, 146

### RTV utility, 125

## S

### scratch subpools

VT QUery command, 54

SLUVCDAT, Flat File Static Configuration Data  
DSECT, 206, 208

Startup Parameter Changes, 224

## T

TAPEREQ control statement, 194

## U

UNITATTR control statement, 200

### user exits

SLSUX02, 205

SLSUX04, 205

user exits for VSM, 205

## V

VOLATTR control statement, 202, 212, 213, 215

examples, 203

for MVCs, 202, 212, 213, 215

parameters, enhanced, 203

parameters, unchanged, 202

usage, 203

### volume report records

SLUVCDAT, Flat File Static Configuration Data

DSECT, 206

### VSM

online documentation, xvi

related publications, xii

StorageTek technical support, xvi

VT CANCEL command, 10

VT Display command, 37

VT MIGrate command, 84, 137

VT MVCDEF command, 88

VT MVCDRain command, 90

VT QUery command, 117

VT RECALL command, 118

VT RECLaim command, 121

VT TRace command, 140

VT Vary RTD command, 142, 144, 146

### VTCS

#### commands

VT CANCEL, 10

VT Display, 37

VT MIGrate, 84, 137

VT MVCDEF, 88

VT MVCDRain, 90

VT QUery, 117

VT RECALL, 118

VT RECLaim, 121

VT TRace, 140

VT Vary RTD, 142, 144, 146

online documentation, xvi

publications, xii

related publications, xii

#### utilities

AUDIT, 4

CONFIG, 12

CONSolid, 32

DECOM, 70

MVCRPT, 72, 76, 81, 93, 99, 106, 151

overview, 1

recovery, 125

RTV, 125

VTVMaint, 151

VTVRPT, 156

### VTDs

command reference, 251

### VTSSs

VT QUery command, 44, 46, 47, 67, 68, 69, 214, 216

VTVMaint utility, 151

VTVRPT utility, 156

### VTVs

consolidating by specifying Management Class, 34

consolidating by specifying VTVs, 33

VT MIGrate command, 84, 137, 138

VT QUery command, 56

VT RECALL command, 118, 119

## W

Warn command

parameter explanations

THReshld, 212

